(Dr) Prashant Subhash Palghadmal M.Pharmacy (PhD. Pursing) Presently, He is working as a HOD and academic in charge at Ashvin College of Pharmacy, Manchi hill Tal Sangamner Dist. Ahmednagar. He has a total of 10 years and 4 months of Academic experience. He has published one book chapter in Tyler and Francis. He has attended 03 national Conferences. he has published 2 Indian patents and one Australian Patent. he has published 05 Scopus papers. He worked as chief Guest at various colleges. He has completed B. Pharmacy and M. Pharmacy from Savitribai Phule University.

Dr. Nitin G. Sutar (M Pharm., Ph D) Presently working as an H.O.D. and Associate Professor in the Department of Pharmacognosy, Sanjivani College of Pharmaceutical Education and Research, Kopargaon. Dist.-Ahmadnagar. He has a total of 18 years of academic experience. He has attended 03 National Conferences. He has 08 granted patents (Product and design from India, UK, and Russia). He has received a best patent presentation award by PCI in 2023 and Smt. Kamal Sharma award. He has published 28 papers in various national and international journals. He has provided research consultancy services of Rs. 3.0 Lakh to various parts of India. He provides education to students through his You Tube channel. He has completed a B. Pharmacy and M. Pharmacy from North Maharashtra University, Jalgaon. He has received a Best Patent Presentation award from PCI and Smt. Kamal Sharma Award for his academic excellence in 2021

(Dr) Mrs. Sancheti Vandana Prafulkumar. M.Pharmacy (PhD Pursing**)** Presently working as Principal at Snd Institute of pharmacy BABULGAON yeola dist. Nashik. She has a total of 25 years of Academic experience she has published 7 papers and one Indian patent. She attended various workshops and conferences. She has passed B. Pharmacy from R.C Patel College and an M. pharmacy from Aanna Saheb Ramesh Ajmera (ARA) College of pharmacy Nagaon Dhule.

Mrs. Kavita Sachin Sharma M. Pharmacy Presently working as Assistant Professor at SND College of pharmacy Babulgaon, yeola dist. Nashik. She has a total of 11 years of Academic experience she has published 7 papers and one Indian patent. She attended various workshops and conferences. She has passed B. Pharmacy from Y.B. Chavan College Aurangabad and an M. pharmacy from Aanna Saheb Ramesh Ajmera (ARA) College of pharmacy Nagaon Dhule.

CHYREN PUBLICATION

Kila No. 39, Badoli, Palwal, Haryana-121102
Mob.: +919812453031,47, Tel: +911275-455-202
E-mail:chyrenpublication@gmail.com
https://www.chyrenpublication.com/

ISBN 978-93-485-3097-4

Textbook of Pharmacognosy & Phytochemistry II

Dr Prashant Subhash Palghadmal
Dr. Nitin G. Sutar
Dr Mrs. Sancheti Vandana Prafulkumar
Mrs. Kavita Sachin Sharma

CHYREN PUBLICATION

TEXTBOOK OF PHARMACOGNOSY & PHYTOCHEMISTRY-II

Dr. Prashant Subhash Palghadmal
Dr. Nitin G. Sutar
Mrs. Sancheti Vandana Prafulkumar.
Mrs. Kavita Sachin Sharma

CHYREN PUBLICATION

Office: Rashulpur Road, Near Bijli Gate, Palwal, Haryana-121102
Reg. Office: 742, Ground Floor, Maruti Chowk, Ghitorni, Delhi-30
Mob. +919812453031,47, Tel: +911275-455-202
E-mail:chyrenpublication@gmail.com
https://www.chyrenpublication.com

Publication: 1ST Edition, **25/11/2024**
ISBN: **978-93-48530-97-4**
Price: Rs.449 /-

Printed & Published By
CHYREN PUBLICATION,
Palwal Haryana, India

Disclaimer

The views expressed by the authors in the book published by Chyren Publication,Palwal, (HR) are their own. They do not necessarily reflect the views of the publisher. The publisher is not responsible in any way for any liability arisingfrom the content/text of these books.

Preface

We are delighted to present to the B.Pharm Fifth Semester students this comprehensive book on "Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry-II".

This book has been meticulously crafted to align with the current syllabus prescribed by the Pharmacy Council of India for B.Pharm students. With a focus on meeting the academic needs of both students and educators, the content has been designed to cover all topics comprehensively yet concisely, ensuring it remains easy to understand and accessible.

The book provides a robust foundation in secondary metabolites, phytochemistry, and the processes of isolation, industrial production, estimation, analysis, and utilization of phytoconstituents. These concepts are vital for students as they progress in their pharmaceutical careers.

We have taken utmost care to ensure that the text is error-free and student-friendly. While we strive for perfection, we warmly welcome constructive feedback and suggestions for improvement, which will be incorporated into future editions.

It is our sincere hope that this book will serve as a valuable resource in your academic journey and professional development.

Acknowledgement

We extend our heartfelt gratitude to the Almighty for bestowing upon us the strength, wisdom, and perseverance to bring this book, “Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry-II,” to fruition.

We are deeply indebted to our parents, whose unwavering support, blessings, and encouragement have been a constant source of inspiration throughout this journey. Their sacrifices, guidance, and belief in us have been the cornerstone of our success.

It is with profound gratitude and humility that we dedicate this work to their enduring love and the divine grace that has guided us every step of the way.

(Dr) Prashant Subhash Palghadmal
Dr. Nitin G. Sutar
(Dr) Mrs. Sancheti Vandana Prafulkumar.
Mrs. Kavita Sachin Sharma

Contents

Chapter:1 2
Metabolic pathways in higher plants and their determination

Chapter :2 7
Study of utilization of radioactive isotopes

Chapter:3 11
Alkaloids

Chapter :4 25
Phenylpropanoids and Flavonoids

Chapter :5 33
Steroids, Cardiac Glycosides & Triterpenoids

Chapter:6 43
Volatile oils

Chapter:7 54
Tannins

Chapter:8 60
Resins

Chapter:9 69
Glycosides

Chapter :10 75
Iridoids, Other terpenoids & Naphthaquinones

Chapter:11 89
Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Terpenoids

Chapter:12 96
Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Glycosides

Chapter:13 101
Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Alkaloids

Chapter 14 110
Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Resins

Chapter:15 115
Industrial production, estimation and utilization of phytoconstituents115

Chapter :16 135
Basics of Phytochemistry

UNIT-I

Chapter:1
Metabolic pathways in higher plants and their determination

Brief study of basic metabolic pathways and formation of different secondary metabolites through these pathways- Shikimic acid pathway, Acetate pathways and Amino acid pathway.

Introduction:

All organisms engage in intermediary metabolism to convert and interchange organic compounds essential for living, growth, and reproduction. This network of enzyme-mediated generates ATP, providing energy, and produces building blocks for cellular structures. Fundamental compounds like carbohydrates, proteins, fats, and nucleic acids undergo similar synthesis and modification pathways across different organisms, highlighting the unity of life through primary metabolism, which involves primary metabolites.

In addition to primary metabolites, there are secondary metabolites, unique to specific organisms, that serve to express species distinctiveness. These compounds are not universally produced and their functions remain largely unexplored, emphasizing a less understood aspect of metabolism that still holds significance within certain ecological contexts.

Basic Metabolic Pathways:

Primary metabolism supplies the building blocks for secondary (figure 1). This handle appears how the metabolites gotten from photosynthesis, glycolysis, and Krebs cycle are confined from the vitality -creating p rocesses to provide biosynthetic intermediates. utilized in the acetic acid derivation, shikimate, mevalonate and deoxyxylulose phosphate pathways, separately.

In natural product synthesis, separated from acetyl -CoA, shikimic corrosive, mevalonic corrosive, and deoxyxylulose phosphate, a few other building pieces based on amino acids are too used. used in the acetic acid derivation, shikimate, mevalonate and deoxyxylulose phosphate pathways, respectively. This prepare appears how the metabolites gotten from photosynthesis, glycolysis, and Krebs cycle are confined from the vitality -creating p rocesses to provide biosynthetic intermediates.

Large number of anti-microbials, peptides, proteins, and alkaloids are determined from amino acids. Ornithine (a non-protein amino corrosive) and lysine (its homologue) are alkaloid forerunners which have their roots in Krebs cycle intermediates.

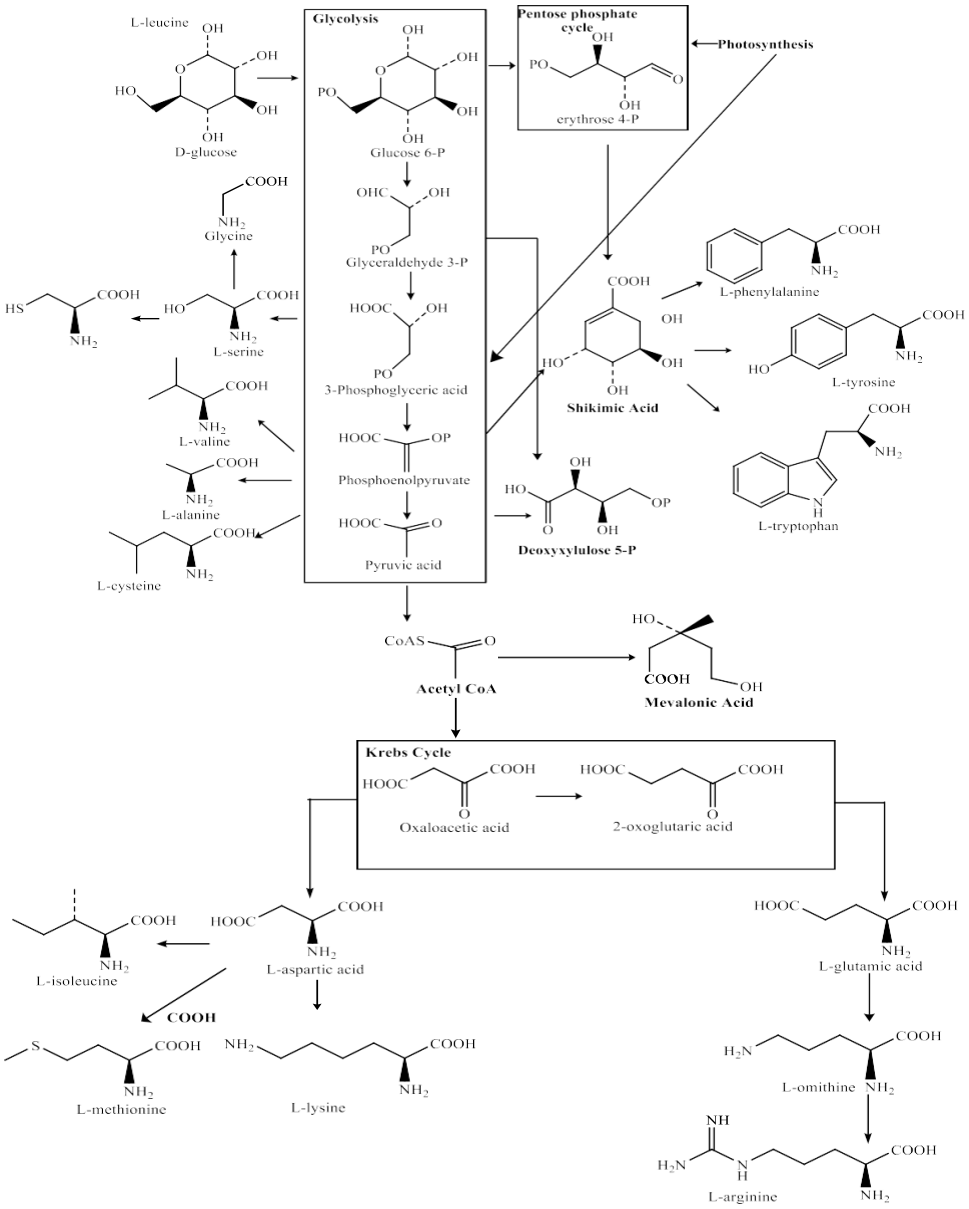


Fig: 1. Basic Metabolic Pathways.

Shikimic Acid Pathway (Amino Acid Pathway)

The shikimic acid pathway is a different way to create aromatic. It mainly produces L-phenalanine, L-tyrosine and L-tryptophan. Microorganisms & plants use this pathway. Shikimic acid itself comes from the Illicium species of plants. It's the key player in this pathway. Let's look at the reactions happening in the shikimic acid pathway (see figure 2):

Conversion of Erythrose -4-Phosphate to 3-Dehydroquinic Acid: First off, when D-erythrose-4-phosphate teams up with phosphoenolpyruvate, it forms 3-Deoxy-D-Arabino-Heptulosonic acid -7-Phosphate (DAHP). This is all thanks to an enzyme called phospho-2-oxo-3-deoxyheptonate aldolase. Then, the enzyme 3-dehydroquinate synthase works its magic by transforming DAHP into 3-dehydroquinic acid. It needs cobalt (II) & Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide (NAD) to help out.

Formation of Shikimic Acid: Next, dehydroquinic acid changes into quinic acid or 3-dehydroshikimic acid, keeping the pathway moving and making shikimic acid.

Formation of Chorismic Acid: After that, shikimic acid gets phosphorylated thanks to shikimate kinase. It then links with enol pyruvate to make 3-enolpyruvylshikimic acid 5-phosphate. The enolpyruvylshikimate phosphate synthase enzyme helps here too! Then, chorismate synthase steps in to turn it into chorismic acid.

Formation of Other Intermediates: Finally, chorismic acid morphs into anthranilic acid with glutamine's help. Plus, the chorismate mutase enzyme helps to make prephenic acid from it as well. Oh! And chorismic acid also converts into p-aminobenzoic acid.

Formation of Arom Amino Acids: So, anthranilic acid changes phosphoribosylanthran acid. This reaction is helped along by an enzyme anthranilate phosphoribosyl transferase. Next, it carboxyphenylodeoxyribulose-5-phosphate. That step is guided by the phosphoribylanthranilate isomerase enzyme. After that, there's a cool transformation where indolyl-3-glycerol phosphate forms. This ring closure happens thanks to indolylglycerol phosphate synthase.

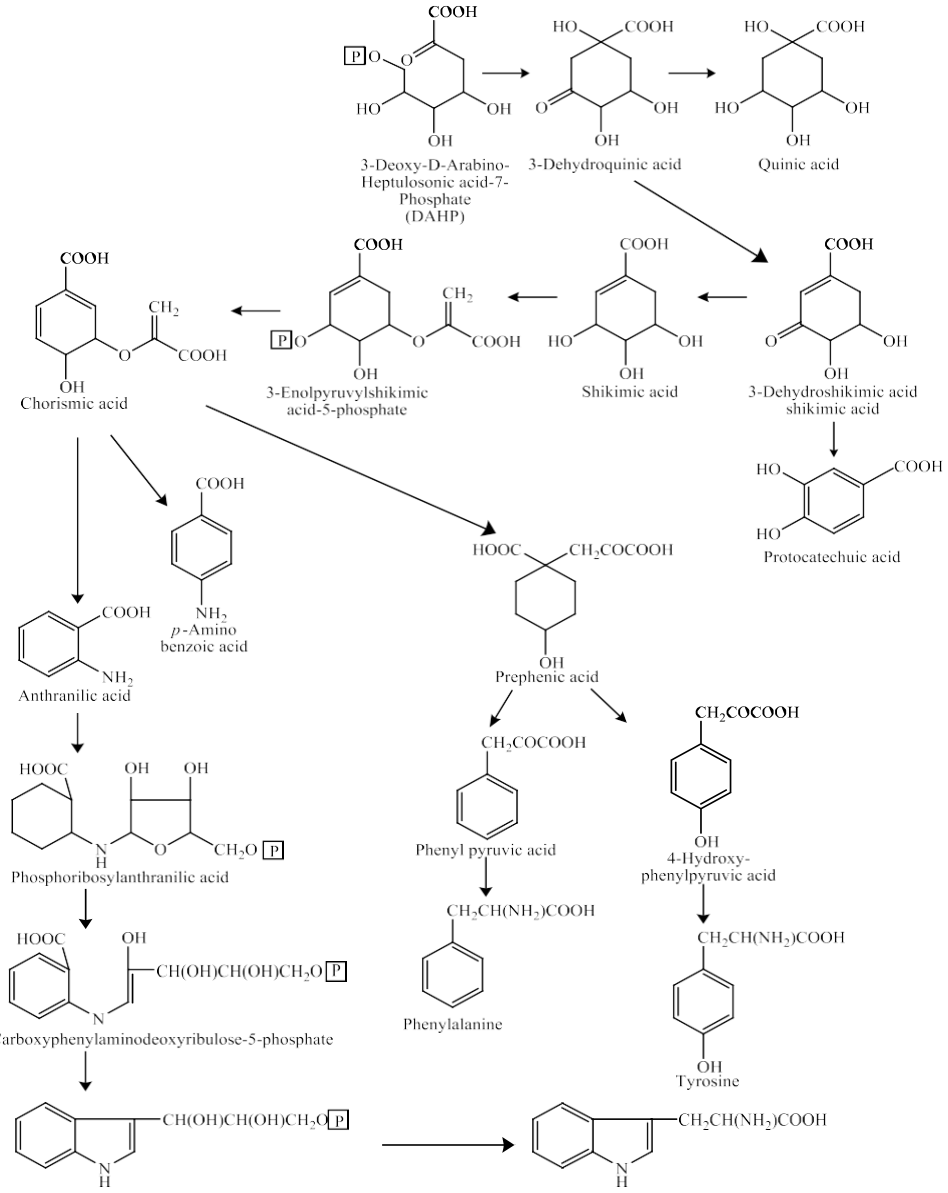


Fig: 2. Shikimic Acid Pathway

Acetate-Mevalonate Pathway

Acetic acid plays an important role in biogen pathways. It was first found out back in 1950 when scientists discoveredyl coenzyme A, which is acetate. After that, they found out that meval acid is linked to acetate.

This mevalonic acid helps create Isopentenyl Pyrophosphate (IPP) and another related compound called Dimethylallyl Pyrophosphate (DMAPP). Together, IPP & DMAPP are the main intermediates that form what we call the 'active isoprene' unit. This unit acts as a key building block for isoprenoid compounds.

These two compounds, IPP and DMAPP, combine to produce geranyl pyrophosphate. That one is a kind of C10-monoterpene. Then, it pairs up with IPP again to make farnesyl pyrophosphate, which is a C15-sesquiterpene. Farnesyl pyrophosphate brings about another complex process; it combines with yet another IPP unit to create geranyl-geranyl pyrophosphate, a C20-diterpene.

Now, farnesyl pyrophosphate can double up with itself to form squalene. After this, squalene undergoes cyclization and creates a unique structure called cyclopentanoperhydrophenanthrene, which contains steroidal compounds too—like cholesterol & triterpenoids!

So, you can see how two different compound skeletons come out: steroids & triterpenoids arise from the acetate mevalonate pathway working through IPP & DMAPP via squalene. Plus, this process produces a ton of other interesting compounds like monoterpenoids, sesquiterpenoids, diterpenoids, carotenoids, polyprenols, glycosides, and even alkaloids when mixed with other pathways.

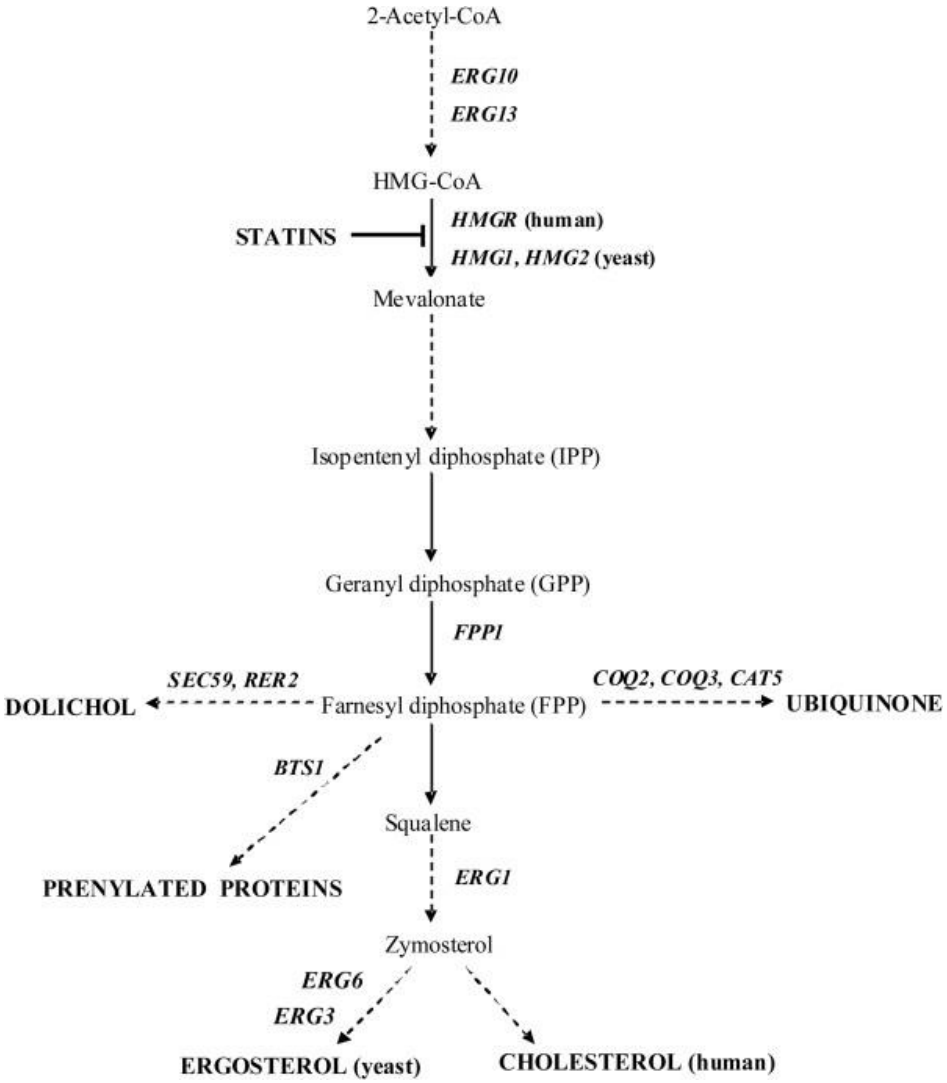


Fig: 3: Acetate Mevalonate Pathway.

Acetate Malonate Pathway

With Acyl Carrier Protein (ACP) in the mix, the acetate pathway works to create fatty acyl thio of ACP. These acyl thioesters are super important because they serve as key intermediates in making fatty acids. Later on, we see the production of even-numbered fatty acids, ranging from n-tetraenoic (that's butyric) all the way up to n-eicosanoic (also known as arachidic acid).

Now, when saturated fatty acids go through direct dehydrogenation, they can turn into unsaturated ones. Enzymes? They really step up here! They help determine exactly where those new double bonds will pop up in the fatty acids.

Formation of Different Secondary Metabolites

Plant cells produce vital organic compounds like carbohydrates, proteins, fats, membrane lipids, nucleic acids, chlorophylls and hemes. These substances, crucial for plant metabolism and found across plant species, are known as **primary metabolites**.

Many plants also create organic compounds that don't directly impact their growth or development. These substances, called **secondary metabolites**, **secondary plant products**, or **natural products**, are diverse and chemically complex. They incorporate compounds such as alkaloids, terpenes (enveloping steroids and elastic), tannins, flavonoids, and more.

Figure 4 illustrates the main biosynthetic pathways of secondary metabolites and how they connect to primary metabolism in plants.

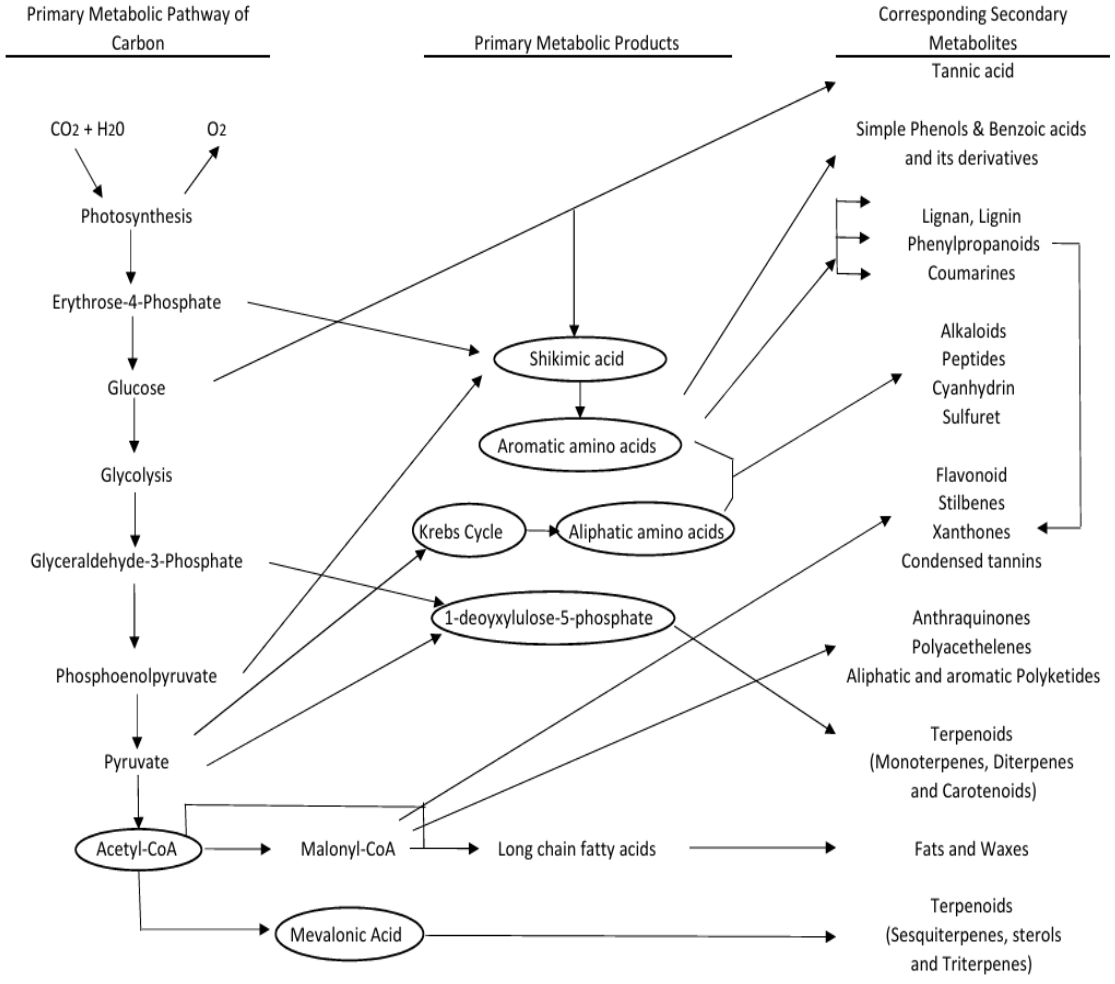


Figure 4. Formation of Different Secondary Metabolites

Chapter :2

Study of utilization of radioactive isotopes

Study of utilization of radioactive isotopes in the investigation of Biogenetic studies.

Introduction

Living shops are the biosynthetic laboratory as numerous primary and secondary metabolites are synthesised in them, through various biosynthetic pathways.

These pathways involve different intermediate way that can be identified by using different scientific ways.

Biogenetic investigation in plants can be performed by the following methods

1) Using isolated organs tissues,
2) Grafting methods,
3) Use of mutant strains, and
4) Tracer technique.

Using Isolated Organs/ Tissues

In this system, isolated parts of plant (e.g., stem, roots, etc.) are used. thus, this technique is used to investigate the synthesis point of a particular compound.

Procedure

From the sample plant, shoots or any asked part are isolated and placed in water or in a suitable result. For some days, the plant part remains bloated and undergoes normal metabolism; but soon a pathological metabolism threshold. This technique can be modified by connecting the cut end of the plant part (shoot, root, petal discs, etc.) to a vessel of suitable sterile nutrient so that the shoot remains normal for a longer period. This entire process is carried out under aseptic conditions. analogous method is used for maintaining the isolated leaves.

The factor that may undermine the res ults of this trial is that generally roots develop at the cut ends of similar shoots. A rapid-fire growth occurs under optimum conditions and sub- cultures may be produced, if required. The biogenetic and growth studies can be performed by adding the chose composites to the culture as per need. By using this method, it has been delved that tropane alkaloids are synthesized in the roots of utmost of the Solanaceae plants. Also, the addition of numerous precursors into the alkaloids has been identified.

This method is relatively useful for probing various biogenetic pathways, as isolated tissues and cells can be cultivated in this technique. It involves the use of pure plant material which can be attained at al l times and fluently managed under controlled and reproducible conditions. Also, the possible precursors of metabolites under demonstration can be added to the system and the sample can be repetitively extracted for analysis. The sterile culture ensures tha t bacterial and fungal alterations of the precursors are removed.

Due to the cultivation of isolated plant organs and tissues, the chances of hindrance from the metabolites produced in other plant parts are reduced. This cultivation method can be us ed to feed experimentations utilising labelled composites and is also used to determine the synthesis point of a particular compound. For example, roots and leaves are used to study nicotiana and datura, petal part s are used to study rose oil, and tropane alkaloi ds formed in the roots of Solanaceae plants.

Grafting Methods

The technique of grafting involves the use of grafted plants to study the biosynthesis of alkaloids. This method is also preferred for determining the spots of primary and secondary metabolites of some secondary plant products.

For example, Tomato scions grafted on datura shows accumulation of alkaloids, while Datura scion grafted on tomato contains actually small quantity of alkaloids. This indicates that the main synthesis site for the formation of datura alkaloids is root.

Use of Mutant Strains

A number of mutant strains of microbes that have been developed, lack a n enzyme that blocks their metabolism at a specific stage. similar microorganisms may accumulate the intermediate compound just before the blockage, and bear an artificial supply of another intermediate (which occurs after the blockage) for their survival. thus, these microorganisms are useful for studying the biosynthetic pathways of various primary and secondary metabolites.

For example, mutant strain of Gibberella is used for the synthesis of isoprenoid compounds; Lactobacillus acidophilus is used in mevalonic acid pathway for the synthesis of isoprenoid compounds.

Utilisation of Radioactive Isotopes

Radioactive tracers are radioactive isotopes used in biogenetic studies. These are organic compounds whose one or further atoms have been replaced with a radionuclide. Due to their property of radioactive decay, the radioactive tracers are used to delve the procedure of chemical responses by tracing the path followed by the radioisotope from reactants to products.

Examples of radioisotope tracers used constantly to trace the path of biochemical responses are hydrogen, carbon, phosphorus, sulphur, and iodine.

Tracer Technique

These radioactive isotopes or tracers are used in tracer techniques for delving the biosynthetic pathways. In this technique, a labelled compound is used to inv estigate the different interceders and various way in b iosynthetic pathways in plants by tracing them at a given rate and time. This fashion also uses a labelled emulsion which is introduced into the factory system. After which the compound becomes a part of the general metabolic pool, and gets involved in the affiliated reactions of the particular plant system. For this technique, the radioactive carbon (14C), hydrogen (3H), and to a lower extent sulphur (35S) and phosphorus (32P), are used for analysing the various biosynthetic pathways.

Significance of Tracer Technique

The tracer technique has the following significations

1) It's largely sensitive.
2) It's used in the living system.
3) A number of isotopes are available that can be used in this technique.
4) It's a more trustworthy and easy process of administration and isolation.
5) It provides accurate results if used with proper metabolic time and technique.
6) It uses the position and volume of compound containing 14C labelled glucose tracer for determining glucose in the biological system.

Routeway

Involved in Tracer Technique Following four way are involved in the tracer technique Step 1 Preparation of Labelled Compound

1) The labelled compound is produced by allowing them to grow in atmosphere of 14CO2. All composites containing carbon get 14C labelled.
2) The 3H(tritium) labelled compound s are commercially available. Tritium labelling gets affected by catalytic exchange in hydrated media by hydrogenation of unsaturated compound with tritium gas. Tritium is pure- emitter of low intensity having radiation energy lower than 14C.
3) By the use of organic synthesis

Step 2 : preface of Labelled Compound into Biological System

1) Root Feeding This methodology is preferred in plants in which the roots are the spots of biosynthesis, e.g., tobacco. In this methodology, the plants are cultivated hydroponically to prevent them from microbial contaminant.
2) Stem Feeding This methodology does n't bear root for biosynthesis. This is because the substrate can be administered through the cut ends of stem immersed in a result. This system of labelling is n't suited for plants containing latex.
3) Direct Injection This methodology is preferred for plants having concave stem, e.g., plants belonging to Umbelliferae family and capsule bearing plant s(e.g., opium poppy).
4) Infiltration or Wick Feeding This methodology is preferred when it's needed to feed on plant rooted in soil or other support without disturbing the root.
5) Floating Method This methodology is preferred when a small quantity of material is available. In this methodology, leaf slice or diced leaves floating on the substrate solution are used. This technique is used along with vacuum infiltration so that gases present in the system can be removed.
6) Spray Technique In this methodology, the labelled compounds are spraye d on leaves in hydrated solution, therefore the compound s absorb. This methodology is preferred for the delving of steroids.

Step 3:Separation and spotting methodologies

Selection of methodology to be used for t he extraction process depends on the nature of the medicine and its source

1) Soft and Fresh Tissue Infusion and maceration.
2) Hard Tissue Decoction and hot percolation.
3) Unorganised Drug Maceration with acclimation.

Selection of the solvent to be used for the e xtraction also depends on the nature of the medicine to be extracted

1) Fat and OilNon-polar solvent.
2) Alkaloid, Glycoside, and Flavonoid Slightly polar solvent.
3) Plant Phenol Polar solvent.

strategies like fractional crystallisation and column chromatography are also used for separation process.

The f ollowing methodologies are used for separation and discovery of the plant metabolites

1) GM counters,
2) Liquid scintillation chamber,
3) Gas ionisation chamber,
4) Mass spectrophotometer,
5) NMR spectrophotometer, and
6) Auto- radiography.
7)

Step 4 methodologies for Tracer Technique

The following five methodologies are involved in the tracer technique

1) Precursor Product Sequence In this system, the presumed precursor of the factory element to be delved on a labelled fo rm is introduced into the plant. After some time, the component is isolated, purified and its radioactivity is measured.

Examples

1. In Datura stramonium, the defined synthesis of hyoscine is different from hyoscyamine.
2. This methodology is used to delve the biogenesis of mo rphine and ergot alkaloids.

2) Double and Multiple Labelling This methodology provides evidences for the nature of biochemical incorporation of precursor that give rise to double and triadic labelling. This system involves the use of a specifically labelled precursor and the posterior degradation of recovered product.

Examples

1) This methodology is used for studying the biogenesis of secondary metabolites in plants.
2) This methodology is used for studying morphine alkaloid.

3) Competitive Feeding This methodology gives the possible interceders that are involved during biogenesis.

Examples

1. This methodology is usedfor explication ofthe biogenesis of rtopane alkaloids.
2. This methodology is used along with 14C labelled compounds in the biosynthesis of hemlock alkaloids (coniine, conhydrine, etc.).

4) Isotope Incorporation This methodology is used to delve the position of bond fractionalization and their conformation during reaction.

Example

fractionalization of g lucose-1-phosphatase is catalysed by alkaline phosphatase enzyme; this response occurs with the fractionalization of either C ─ O bond or P ─ O bond.

Sequential Analysis In this methodology, the plant is allowed to grow in atmosphere of 14CO2 and also the plant growth at given time intervaisl analysed to acquire the sequence in which various correlated compousnbdecome labelled.

Examples

1. In photosynthesis, 14CO2 successional analysisis used in carbon elucidation.
2. This methodology is used to determine the successional formation of opium hemlock and tobacco alkaloids.

Applications of Tracer Technique

Tracer technique has the following applications

1) It's used to trace the biosynthetic pathway of prunasine(cyanogenetic glycoside) by the incorporation of 14C into phenylaniline.
2) It utilises 14C acetate to analyse the relationship between 4- methyl sterols and 4, 4 dimethyl sterols.
3) It utilises 14C, 3H labelled mevalonic acid for studying squalene cyclisation.
4) It utilises 2-14 C mevalonate to delve t erpenoid biosynthesis by chloroplast separated in organic solvent.
5) It's used to study cinnamic acid conformation from labelled coumarin in pathway of coumarin.
6) It utilises 14C or 15N labelled precursor to determine the origin of carbon and nitrogen atoms of purine ring system.
7) It utilises labelled phenylalanine to study scopoletin conformation.
8) It utilises 45Ca as a tracer to analyse the uptake of calcium by plants from soil(CaO and CaCO2).
9) By adding ammonium phosphate labelled with 32P of known specific activity, the uptake of phosphorus is followed by measuring the radioactivity as marker reaches first the lower pla nt region, and also the upper region, i.e., branches, leaves, etc.

UNIT-II

Chapter:3
Alkaloids

General introduction:

The chemical products of plants having no part in the growth, photosynthesis, replication, or other primary functions are known as secondary metabolites. The diversity of these chemicals is vast, i.e., they have been identified in multiple quantities in numerous major classes. A characteristic admixture of these chemicals is produced by plant s of every family, genus, and species. These chemicals can occasionally be used in plant category based on their taxonomy. Many of these composites are used as drug, flavourings, or recreational medicines by humans.

Several secondary metabolites are poisonous or repellent to herbivores and microbes, therefore defend the plants in which they're produced. When a plant is attacked by herbivores or pathogens, the product of these secondary metabolites increases and many of these composites are released in air. These com pounds attract the parasites and predators which kill the herbivores.

In recent examinations on these chemicals, further of their primary functions in plants like signals, antioxidants, and other functions are being connected. Consumption of some specific secondary metabolites can have dangerous consequences. Alkaloids can block ion channels, inhibit enzymes, and hold up neurotransmission, therefore responding in hallucination, loss of cooperation, convulsions, vomiting, and finally death. Phenolics can break in digestion, retardation the normal growth, block enzyme activity and cell division, and also have an unpleasant taste.

Secondary chemicals are important in plant use by humans. The pharmaceuticals are substantially based on the plant chemical structures, and for recreation and stimulation, secondary metabolites, e.g., nicotine and cocaine alkaloids and cannabinol terpene are extensively used. Ethnopharmacology is the study of similar use of plant.

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of Alkaloids

Vinca, Rauwolfia, Belladonna, Opium

Alkaloids:

Introduction to Alkaloids

Alkaloids are a diverse group of naturally occurring organic compounds that primarily contain nitrogen atoms. These compounds are mostly derived from plants but can also be found in fungi, bacteria, and animals. Alkaloids are often characterized by their significant physiological effects on humans and animals, making them essential in medicine and pharmacology.

Composition and General Chemistry

Basic Structure:

Alkaloids are heterocyclic compounds containing nitrogen, often in the form of an amine. They may also contain oxygen, sulfur, and occasionally other elements.

Chemistry:

Chemical characteristics of the alkaloids are taken into account under the following heads:

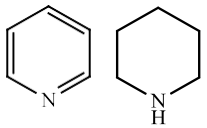
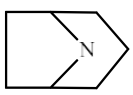
N-Atom in the Molecule: Along with carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen, the most essential component of alkaloids is the N -atom. Alkaloids should have at least one or more N -atoms in a molecule. For example, cocaine has five nitrogen atoms in its molecule. In case of quinine, reserpine, strychnine, vinblastine, and yohimbine molecules, these N -atoms are a part of the heterocyclic ring, whereas in ephedrine and mescaline, N -atoms are present in the aliphatic side chain. The N-atom in morphine and reserpine is present as tertiary-

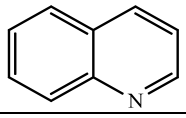
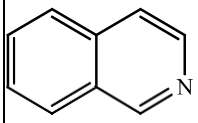
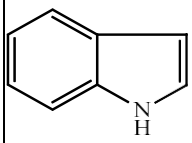
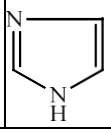
amine (R3N), in ephedrine as secondary-amine (R2NH), and in nor -pseudo-ephedrine as primary-amine (RNH2). The N -atom in tertiary - or secondary -form is an integral part of the heterocyclic ring system. In tertiary amine form of N -atom (having only two bonds in the ring), the methyl moiety makes the third component, e.g., N-methyl group in morphine, cocaine, colchicine, dextromethorphan, codeine, physostigmine, vinblastine, videsine, etc. This concludes that methyl moiety is the only alkyl group substituted on N-atom. In certain alkaloids, e.g., tubocurarine chloride, N -atom is p resent as quaternary ammonium (R 4N + X). But as per the logical and technical perspective, the quaternary ammonium compounds are not alkaloids. This can be exemplified by the following reasons:
N-atom without a H-atom, and
Different chemical properties.
O-Atom in the Molecule: Along with C, H and N, some alkaloids carry O - atom. Alkaloids of this category are basically solid alkaloids, except certain oxygenated alkaloids which are non-volatile liquids, e.g., pilocarpine.
Basicity (Alkalinity): Presence of N-atom in the alkaloid molecule gives it a characteristic basic or alkaline reaction, thereby resulting in the formation of their respective salts on reacting with many acids.

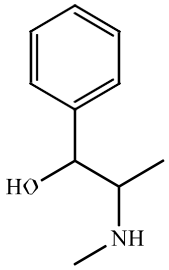
Classification:
Alkaloids are broadly categorized based on their chemical structure or biosynthetic origin:
True alkaloids: Derived from amino acids (e.g., morphine, nicotine).
Protoalkaloids: Contain nitrogen but are not derived from amino acids (e.g., ephedrine).
Pseudoalkaloids: Derived from precursors other than amino acids (e.g., caffeine).

Chemical Properties:
Mostly alkaline due to the presence of nitrogen.
Typically form salts with acids (e.g., hydrochloride, sulfate).
Soluble in organic solvents and sparingly soluble in water.

Chemical Classes
Alkaloids are grouped into several chemical classes based on their structure:
Pyridine and piperidine alkaloids: E.g., nicotine, piperine.
Tropane alkaloids: E.g., atropine, cocaine.
Isoquinoline alkaloids: E.g., morphine, codeine.
Quinoline alkaloids: E.g., quinine, cinchonine.
Indole alkaloids: E.g., reserpine, vincristine.
Imidazole alkaloids: E.g., pilocarpine.
Steroidal alkaloids: E.g., solanine.
Purine alkaloids: E.g., caffeine, theobromine.

True Alkaloids		
Types	**Structures**	**Examples**
Pyridine and Piperidine		For example, nicotine, anabasine (tobacco), and lobeline (lobelia).
Tropane		For example, atropine, hyoscine, hyoscyamine (belladonna, datura), and cocaine (coca).

Quinoline		For example, quinine, quinidine, cinchonine, and cupreine (cinchona).
Isoquinoline		For example, morphine, codeine, narcotine, narc eine (opium) emetine, and cephaline (ipecac).
Indole		For example, ergotamine, ergometrine (ergot), reserpine (rauwolfia), vincristine, vinblastine (vinca), strychnine, and brucine (nux-vomica).
Imidazole		For example, pilocarpine an d isopilocarpine (pilocarpus).

Protoalkaloids		
Type	**Structure**	**Examples**
Alkylamine		**For example,** ephedrine and pseudoephedrine.

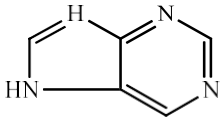
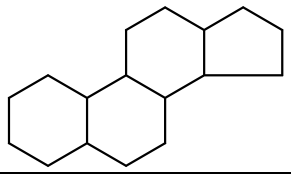
Pseudoalkaloids		
Types	**Structures**	**Examples**
Purine		**For example,** caffeine , theophylline, and theobromine.
Steroidal		**For example,** solanidin e, conessine, and protoveratrine.
Diterpene	$C_{20}H_{32}$	**For example,** aconitine, aconine.

Table: Classification of Alkaloids along with the structure

Biological Sources:

Alkaloids are primarily found in the plant kingdom, particularly in families such as:

Solanaceae (e.g., belladonna, tobacco).

Papaveraceae (e.g., opium poppy).

Rubiaceae (e.g., cinchona).

Fabaceae (e.g., lupin).

Apocynaceae (e.g., Rauwolfia).

Fungi (e.g., ergot alkaloids from Claviceps purpurea) and animals (e.g., bufotenine in toads) are other sources.

Distribution in Plants:
In some plants, alkaloids are found in
All the parts, e.g., datura.
Barks, e.g., cinchona.
Seeds, e.g., nux vomica.
Roots, e.g., aconite.
Fruits, e.g., black pepper.
Leaves, e.g., tobacco.
Latex, e.g., opium.

Methods of Extraction:
Solvent Extraction:
Plant material is macerated or percolated with solvents such as ethanol, methanol, or water-acid mixtures.
Acid-Base Method:
Plant material is treated with acid to extract alkaloids as salts, followed by basification to free the alkaloids.
Soxhlet Extraction:
Efficient for extracting alkaloids using organic solvents.
Chromatographic Techniques:
Used for purification, e.g., column chromatography, high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC).
Supercritical Fluid Extraction:
Uses supercritical CO_2 for a cleaner and more efficient extraction.

Therapeutic Uses:
Alkaloids have a wide range of pharmacological effects:
Analgesics: Morphine, codeine.
Antimalarials: Quinine.
Antihypertensives: Reserpine.
Bronchodilators: Ephedrine.
Anticancer agents: Vincristine, vinblastine.
Stimulants: Caffeine, theobromine.
Antispasmodics: Atropine.
Sedatives: Scopolamine.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceutical Industry: Production of painkillers, anti-malarial drugs, and anticancer agents.
Food and Beverage Industry: Alkaloids like caffeine and theobromine are used in coffee, tea, and chocolate.
Agriculture: Used as natural pesticides (e.g., nicotine).
Cosmetics: Caffeine is used in anti-cellulite and skincare products.
Recreational Substances: Cocaine and nicotine have psychoactive applications (though often abused).
Alkaloids represent a crucial class of secondary metabolites with a profound impact on health, agriculture, and industry.

Individual Drugs:
The Pharmacognostic profile of the following drugs has been discussed below:
Vinca,
Rauwolfia,

Belladonna, and
Opium.

Vinca

Vinca (or sadabahar or periwinkle) is commonly grown in India. It has its origin in Madagascar. Two varieties of vinca, namely pink and the white coloured flower varieties are grown for their medicinal value.

Figure: Vinca Plant

Synonyms: Catharanthus, Periwinkle, and Sadabahar.
Biological Source: Vinca is the dried whole plant of Catharanthus roseus or Vinca rosea.
Family: Apocynaceae.
Geographical Source
Vinca is native to Madagascar. It is grown as an ornamental plant in India, South Africa, U.S.A., Europe, Australia, and Caribbean islands.

Macroscopic Features

Vinca is an erect, pubescent herb, and has the following organoleptic features:
Colour: Leaves are green, roots are pale grey, and flowers are violet pink - white or carmine-red coloured.
Odour: Characteristic.
Taste: Bitter.
Roots: Branched tap-root.
Leaves: Simple, petiolate, ovate or oblong, unicostate, reticulate, entire, brittle with acute apex, and glossy appearance.
Flowers: Bracteate pedicellate, complete, he rmaphrodite, 2 -3cm in cymose axillary clusters.
Fruits: Follicles with several black seeds.

Microscopic Features

Upper surface of vinca leaf has a single layer of rectangular celled epidermis with unicellular covering trichomes. Palisade occurs as a single layer below the upper epidermis and has compact elongated cells. With intercellular spaces, spongy parenchyma of leaf is a 5 -8 layered structure. Midrib has collenchyma just below the upper epidermis and above the lower epidermis. In the centre, xylem and phloem are present, but calcium oxalate crystals are absent. On lower epidermis, cruciferous stomata are abundantly present.

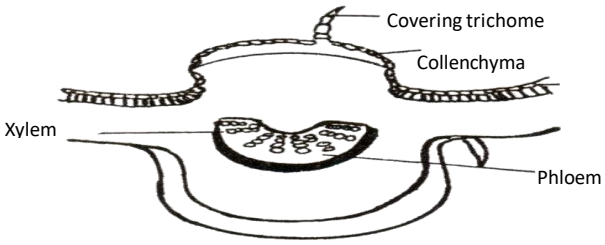


Figure T.S. of Vinca Leaf

Chemical Constituents:

Vinca contains a large number of indole alkaloids, of which around 20 dimeric indole di hydroindole alkaloids exhibit oncolytic activity, vincristine and vinblastine being the most significant ones. Vinblastine contains catharanthine (an indole alkaloid part) and vindoline (a dihydroindole alkaloid part). Ajmalicine, lochner ine, serpentine, and tetrahydroalstonine are the other alkaloids of vinca. For extracting 1gm of vincristine, around 500kg of crude drugs is required as vincristine is present in very low content (0.0002%). Hence, vinca alkaloids are very expensive. The five-ring dihydroindole system present in their ring is found in other natural drugs also. Thus, synthesis of four -ring indole system is under process.

Chemical Tests:

Vincristine sulphate crystals are obtained from ethanol and are found to be unstable.

Uses:

Its leaves and stems are a source of alkaloids, which have antitumour and anticancer properties.
Its leaves are used for controlling diabetes and high blood pressure.
Its alkaloids are sedative and tranquiliser.
It relieves muscle pain and depression.
It exhibits the property of detoxification and can counter the effect of poison, thus is used in wasp stings.
It controls nosebleeds, bleeding gums, mouth ulcers, and sore throats.
On internal administration, it is helpful in gastritis, cystitis, enteritis, diarrhoea, diabetes, etc.
It ensures brain health as the active ingredients improve blood supply to the brain and increase the oxygen level that brain can utilise.
It also raises the serotonin levels and prevents abnormal blood coagulation.
Vincamine alkaloid keeps the blood thin and acts as a memory enhancer, thus is used in preventing dementia.

Adulterants:

Commercial samples of Catharanthus roseus are often found adulterated with certain Solanaceous roots like Solanum melongena (eggplant) and Lycopersicon esculentum (tomato), which adversely affect the quality, as well as total alkaloidal yield of the drug.

Rauwolfia:

Rauwolfia (or sarpagandha or black snakeroot or Indian snakeroot or devil pepper) is an evergreen plant. In India, roo ts and rhizomes of this plant have been in use for hundreds of years. The plant is named after its discoverer, a German doctor and traveller, Leonhard Rauwolf. Due to its immense therapeutic properties, it is used in Ayurvedic, Unani, and Homeopathy.

Synonyms: Rauwolfia root, Serpentina root, Chhotachand, and Sarpagandha.

Biological Source: Rauwolfia is the dried roots of the plant Rauwolfia serpentina Benth.

Family: Apocynaceae.

Geographical Source:

Various species of rauwolfia are found in the tropical regions of America, Africa, and Asia. It is commercially cultivated in America, Thailand, Myanmar, Sri Lanka, and India. In India, it is cultivated in Gujarat, Maharashtra, Karnataka, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu, Orissa, Bihar, and Uttar Pradesh.

Figure: Rauwolfia twig

Macroscopic Features:

Colour: Root bark is greyish yellow to brown and wood is pale coloured.

Odour: Odourless.

Taste: Bitter.

Size: Diameter is around 1-3cm and length is 10-18cm.

Shape: Roots are sub -cylindrical in shape, and tort uous with slight ta pered end.

Fracture: Short and irregular. Transversely cut surface is white, and dense with finely radiating xylem.

Extra Features: Due to longitudinal marking and wrinkled surface, the roots appear rough. Normally, rootlets are absent but some small circular root scars with tetrastichous arrangements can be observed.

Microscopic Features:

Cork: It consists of stratified cells below which phelloderm of few rows of parenchyma is present.

Phloem: It is narrow and parenchymatous with small scattered sie ve tissues. In parenchyma, starch grains and few latex cells with brown resinous matter are present. Calcium oxalate c rystals are present in the secondary phloem.

Xylem: About 80% of diameter of root is xylem which includes vessels, tracheids, wood parenc hyma, and wood fibres. Simple or bordered pits are present on xylem vessels. These vessels are elongated up to 350 □ in length and 50□ in width. Stone cells or phloem fibres are absent.

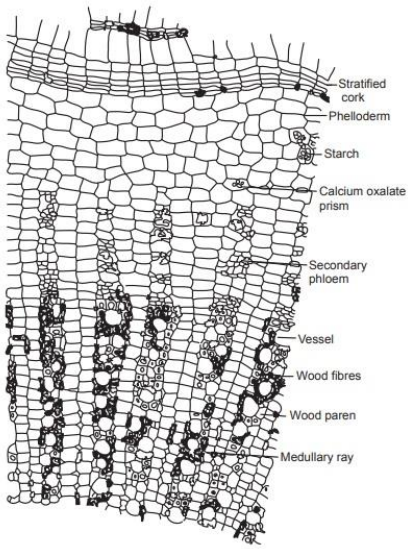


Figure: T.S. of Rauwolfia Root

Chemical Constituents:

Rauwolfia contains about 0.7 -2.4% of total alkaloidal bases, of which more than 80 alkaloids have been isolated. The prominent alkaloids isolated from the drug are reserpine, rescinnamine, □ reserpine, rescidine, raubescine, and deserpidine. The other alkaloidal components are ajmalinine, ajmaline, ajmalicine (8-

yohimbine), serpentine, serpentinine, tetrahydroreserpine, raubasine, reserpinine, isoajamaline, and yohambinine. The other substances present are phytosterols, fatty acids, unsat urated alcohols, and sugars.

Chemical Tests

On adding an acid or on exposing to light, most reserpine solutions give a distinct yellow colour and also a clear fluorescence on standing.

Violet red colour solution appears on treating reserpine with vanillin solution in acetic acid.

On crystallisation of reserpine, crystals of reserpine hydrochloride hydrate ($C_{33}H_{40}N_2O_9.HCl.H_2O$) are obtained that decomposes at 224ºC temperature.

On treating a freshly fractured surface with concentrated nitric acid, a red colour is observed along the medullary ray.

Uses:

1) It is a hypotensive drug having a strong sedative property.
2) It is a mild tranquiliser used for removing low level of anxiety.
3) It is a rich source of indole alkaloids (such as reserpine, ajmaline, ajmalicine, and serpentine), which are used in the treatment of circulatory disorders.
4) Its roots are used for managing and loweringblood pressure due to the presence of reserpine which dilates the blood vessels, and also depresses the CNS activity by acting as a hypnotic.
5) Deserpidine and rescinnamine are also used as hypotensive and tranquilliser.
6) It is also used as an antianxiety, antipsychotic (neuroleptic), hypnotic and sedative drug.
7) It induces sleep and relieves many mental disorders like aggression, anxiety, and sleeplessness. Its leaves are used in removing opacities of cornea.
8) Its root decoction is useful for the treatment of snake poison.
9) In Ayurveda, it is best for reducing fever.
10) In Ayurveda, its roots and whole plant are used for treating rheumatism, insanity, and epilepsy.
11) It also reduces the symptoms of hangover occurring after heavy drinking.
12) It is used to treat uterine pain due to miscarriage as it contracts the uterus and eliminates the toxins from uterine cavity and further relaxes the uterine muscles. This stops bleeding and reduces pain.
13) It decreases pain during menstruation by modulating blood flow, which reduces cramps and throbbing pain.
14) It is also useful for treating dysentery as it reduces the frequency of loose stools, checks bleeding, and alleviates pain.

Substitutes and Adulterants:

For substitution purpose, following species of Rauwolfia are used:
Rauwolfia tetraphylla,
R. densiflora, and
R. vomitoria (African rauwolfia).

The species and varieties of genus Rauwolfia used as adulterants are:
R. tetraphylla L.,
Rauwolfia beddomei Hook.f.,
R. micrantha Hook.f.,
R. verticillata (Lour.) Baill., and
R. densiflora (Wall.) Benth. ex Hook.f.

Belladonna:

Belladonna (or deadly nightshade) is a perennial herbaceous plant. The foliage or berries contain tropane alkaloids, and are very poisonous. Its toxicity is due to the presence of atropine, hyoscyamine, and scopolamine causinghallucinations and bizarre delirium.Its pharmacological activityis anticholinergic.

Figure: Belladonna

Synonyms: Belladonna leaf, Belladonna folium, and Deadly night shade leaf.

Biological Source: Belladonna is the dried leaves and flowering tops of the plant Atropa belladonna. It should contain 0.30% or more of total alkaloids calculated as hyoscyamine.

Family: Solanaceae.

Geographical Source:

Belladonna is native to Europe, North Africa, and Western Asia . In India, belladonna is found in the western Himalayas from Shimla to Kashmir and also in some neighbouring areas of Himachal Pradesh. The main habitat of belladonna includes the forests of Sindh, Chenab valley, and Jammu.

Macroscopic Features:

Colour

Leaves: Green to brownish-green.

Flowers: Purple to yellowish-brown.

Fruits: Green to brown.

Odour: Slight and characteristic.

Taste: Bitter and acrid.

Size:

Leaves: 5-25cm long and 2.5-12cm wide.

Flowers: Corolla 2.5cm long and 1.5cm wide.

Fruits: About 10cm in diameter.

Shape:

Leaves: Ovate, lanceolat e to broadly ovate, with acuminate apex, decurrent lamina, entire margin, petiolate, brittl,eand transversely broken.

Flowers: Campanulate, 5, small reflexed lobes of corolla.

Fruits: Berries, sub-globular in shape with numerous flat seeds.

Extra Features: The whole plant looks wrinkled and twisted; dropping flowers are present with many pairs of leaves. Flowers have five stamens, a superior bilocular ovary having many seeds.

Microscopic Features:
A bifacial structure appears on the transverse section of A. belladonna leaf. The epidermal cells are arranged in wavy walls and have a striated cuticle. Stomata are mainly anisocytic type and some are anomocytic type present on both the upper and lower surface of leaves but are more commonly present on the low er side.

Epidermis

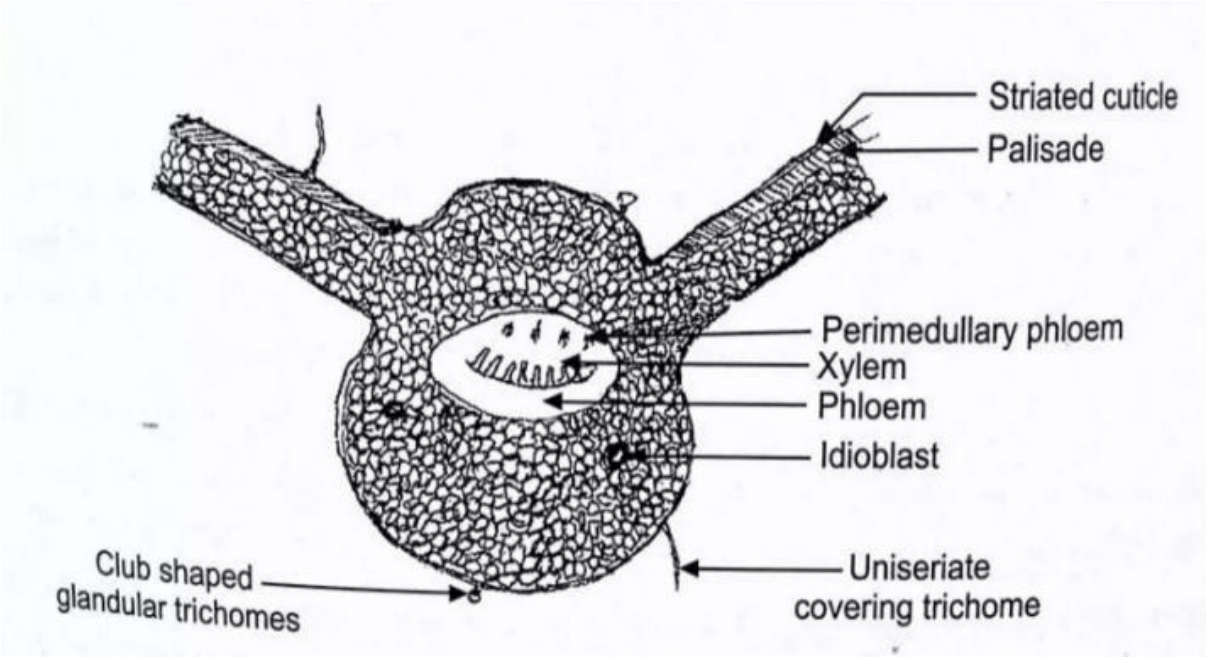


Figure: TS of Atropa Belladonna Leaf

On young leaves, hairs are present abundantly, and are of three types:
First type are uniseriate with two-to four-celled clothing hairs,
Second type resembles the first type but have a unicellular glandular head, and
Third type of hair has a short pedicel and a multicellular glandular head.

Micro sphenoidal (sandy) crystals of calcium oxalate are present in few cells of the spongy mesophyll cells. The midrib has bicollatera l vascular bundle and is convex-shaped above. In the midrib region, a zone of collenchyma forms an underlying layer on both epidermises.

Chemical Constituents:
Around 0.3 -0.60% alkaloids are extracted from Atropa belladonna in which hyoscyamine is the main component. Volatile bases like pyridine and N- methylpyrroline are present in small quantities. If these are not removed during the drug assay by heating, on increasing the titration they appear as hyoscyamine. Leaves of belladonna also have a fluorescent substance, i.e., □-methylaesculetin (scopoletin) and calcium oxalate crystals. The leaves give 4% or less of acid - insoluble ash and about 14% of total ash. About 0.28 - 0.32% of total alkaloids is present in finely powdered drug of a prepared belladonna herb.

Chemical Test:
Belladonna alkaloids give violet colour with fuming HNO 3 and alcoholic KOH solution employed for their assay.

Uses:
It has anticholinergic and parasympathetic properties.

In case of poisoning of opium and chloral hydrate, it is used as an antidote.
It is also used to decrease the secretion of sweat, gastric juice, and saliva.
It is used in breathing abnormalities in infants.
It is used for reducing sweat and other secretions.
It is effective against tonsilitis, meningitis, scarlet fever, whooping cough, and epilepsy.
Belladonna preparations are used against vesico -ureteral refluxes (a condition in which urine flows back towards the kidney from the bladder).
It is used as an analgesic in pain due to kidney stones, sore throat, etc.
It is useful in liver and gall bladder disorders.
Powdered preparations are used to treat asthma.
It can lessen headaches related to migraine.
It eases premenstrual syndrome.
It can reduce spasms in smooth muscles of digestive tract, but causes tremors or stiffness in other muscles.
Atropine, extracted from belladonna is used to dilate pupils.

Adulterants:
The most important adulterant among the numerous are:
Phytolacca decandra (family Phytolaccaceae): In this the lamina is denser and less decurrent than in belladonna. The epidermal cells have straight walls, stomata are of the anomocytic type, and some of the mesophyll cells contain bundles of needle-shaped crystals of calcium oxalate.
Ailanthus glandulosa (family Simarubiaceae): In this the leaves are triangular-ovate with straight -walled epidermal cells. Cuticl e is strongly striated, cluster of calcium oxalate crystals are present, and white, lignified and unicellular clothing hairs are present on both the surfaces.

Opium:
Opium is the dried latex extracted from the seedpods of the plant opium poppy (Papaver somniferum). The un-ripened pods are slit open for the sap to seep out which is then dried on the outer surface of the pod.
The resulting latex is scraped off the pod which is yellow -brown in colour and bitter in taste. Different types of alkaloids, e.g., morphine, codeine, thebaine, and papaverine are present in this latex.

Figure: Papaver somniferum Linn Plant.

Synonyms: Raw Opium, Gum Opium, and Afeem.
Biological Source: Opium is the dried latex extracted from the unripe capsules of the plant opium poppy or Papaver somniferum Linn.
Family: Papaveraceae.
Geographical Source: Opium is commercially cultivated in Afghanistan, Yugoslavia, Bulgaria, Pakistan, Turkey, Persia (Iran) and India. In India, it is mostly grown in Madhya Pradesh.

Macroscopic Features
Colour and Shape: Following are the colours and shapes of different opium:
Indian Opium: Dark brown in colour and is found in the form of cubical pieces enclosed in a tissue paper.

Persian Opium: Dark brown in colour and is found in the form of brick- shaped masses.
Natural Turkish or European Opium: Brown or dark brown in colour and is found in conical or rounded and somewhat flattened masses.
Manipulated Turkish Opium: Chocolate brown or dark brown internally and covered with broken poppy leaves externally. The masses of this type are oval and flattened on upper and lower surface.
Manipulated European Opium: Dark brown in colour internally and covered with broken leaves. It is present in the form of elongated masses with rounded ends.
Odour: Strong characteristic.
Taste: Bitter.

Microscopic Features

Powdered opium is dried latex and brown coloured, amorphous masses of irregular shape. Small particles of water insoluble vegetable tissues are present in these masses. The vegetable debris consists of fragments of outer epidermis of the capsule. The capsule epidermis consists of un -lignified polygonal tubular cells (15-40□ size in either direction). These cells have moderately thick anticlinal walls. Sectional view of vegetable pieces shows greater thickness of the outer wall, and presence of anomocytic stomata. Some of these epidermal cells from the stigma are strongly pitted, giving the lumen a stellate form.

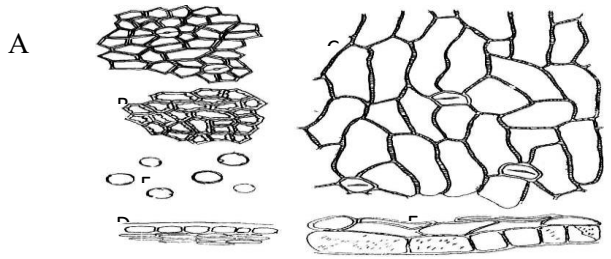


Figure: Fragments of the Capsule Wall of Papaver somniferum L. A) Outer Epidermis; B) Outer Epidermis from the Stigma; C) Inner Epidermis of the Capsule Wall; D) Transverse Section of the Outer Epidermis; E) Transverse Section of the Inner Epidermis of the Capsule Wall; F) Pollen Grains.

Pieces of upper and lower epidermis of the foliage leaves of Papaver somniferum are composed of thin -walled polygonal cells with anomocytic stomata in the lower epidermis (figure 3.10).

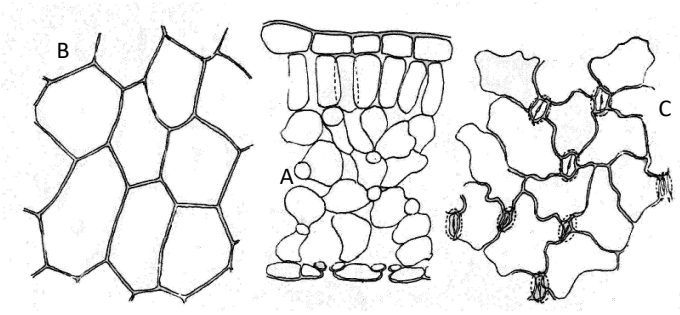


Figure 3.10: Papaver Somniferum, Foliage Leaf. A) T S. of the Lamina; B) Upper Epidermis; C) Lower Epidermis.

Small traces of rounded starch grains (4-8□ in diameter) may be present in the capsule wall. The rarely occurring pollen grains are spherical, smooth, with 3 pores and about 20 -32□ in diameter. Fragments of the lignified inner epidermis of the capsule wall are absent; the cells measure about 70-160□ in surface view and are about 40 -50□ high; their anticlinal walls are pitted and there are a few pits on the inner walls.

Chemical Constituents:

The alkaloids present in the latex are derived from amino acids, phenylalanine, and tyrosine. Different alkaloids derived from the opium are grouped under two categories:

Benzylisoquinoline: Narcotine (noscapine), narceine, and papaverine.

Phenanthrene: Morphine, codeine (methyl morphine), and thebaine.

Narcotine is a weak, monoacidic base and optically laevorotatory, while its salts are dextrorotatory. Narcoti ne is insoluble in water and in some polar organic solvents (alcohol and ether). It is soluble in acetone, benzene, and chloroform.

Papaverine is an optically inactive and weak monoacidic base. It is insoluble in water and slightly soluble in organic solvents.

Morphine is a laevorotatory, phenolic and monoacidic alkaloid. At C -6 position, an alcoholic hydroxyl group is present. Morphine is soluble in alkali hydroxides (except ammonium hydroxide) due to the presence of phenolic hydroxyl group. Heroin is a diacetyl derivative of morphine.

Codeine is a laevorotatory, monoacidic base which is soluble in water and organic solvents (benzene, ether, etc.).

The opium alkaloids are present as salts of meconic acid. Few alkaloids are present in minute concentration, e.g., protopine and hydrocotarnine.

Opium also contains sugar, wax, mucilage, and salts of calcium, potassium and magnesium. Opium does not contain tannins, starch, and calcium oxalate.

Minute, off -white coloured seeds are pre sent in large number within the poppy fruits. These seeds have 30-35% fixed oil.

Chemical Tests:

For identification of alkaloids of opium different chemical tests are performed:

In the general test, opium is identified by testing the presence of meconic acid because opium alkaloids are present as a salt of meconic acid. The test is performed by dissolving opium in water and adding ferric chloride solution to the filtrate. This results in a deep reddish purple colour which remains even on addition of hydrochloric acid.

Orange red colour is obtained on sprinkling morphine on nitric acid. It is noted that codeine does not respond to this test.

On treating morphine solution with potassium ferricyanide and ferric chloride solutions, bluish -green colour is obta ined. Codeine is negative for this test also.

On reacting hydrochloric acid solution of papaverine with ferricyanide solution, lemon yellow colour is obtained.

Uses:

Hypnotic, Sedative, and Analgesic Properties: These properties of opium are due to morph ine. Due to biphasic action on CNS, it shows sedative effects on cerebrum and medulla. It sedates emetic centre, respiratory centre, and cough reflex. Morphine has central narcotic effects and causes addiction. Therefore, it is used only in case of severe pain, or when other analgesics are ineffective.

Stimulation of Chemoreceptor Zone: It stimulates the chemoreceptor zone in medulla which causes nausea and vomiting (a side effect).

Antitussive Properties: Codeine relieves local irritation in the bronchial tract, thus, used in many cough medicines as an antitussive agent. Narcotine has a specific depressant action on cough reflex, therefore,is used in the formulation of cough syrups.

Muscle Relaxant Properties: Papaverine has relaxant effects on intestinal and bronchial tract smooth muscles, and also on blood vessels.

Substitutes and Adulterants:

Species used as substitute of poppy are Papaver argemone, P. dubium, P. orientale, P. bracteatum, P. strigosum, P. intermedia, P. paeoniflorum, hybrid of P. somni ferum and P. oriental e, P. pseu do orientale, and plants from genera Argemone and Eschscholzia (both belonging to family Papaveraceae).

At the present time no adulterants are found in opium; but previously many substances like flour, lead shot, powdered po ppy capsule, gum, roasted bread crumb, pounded dates, etc. were used for adulteration.

Chapter :4

Phenylpropanoids and Flavonoids

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of Phenylpropanoids and Flavonoids
Lignans, Tea, Ruta

Phenylpropanoids

Phenylpropanoids are a large and diverse group of secondary metabolites derived from phenylalanine or tyrosine via the shikimate pathway. They are widely distributed in the plant kingdom and play crucial roles in plant physiology, including structural functions, defense mechanisms, and signaling. These compounds also exhibit significant therapeutic and commercial applications.

Composition and General Chemistry:

Basic Structure:

Phenylpropanoids are characterized by a C6-C3 skeleton, consisting of a benzene ring (C6) attached to a three-carbon side chain (C3). Variations in this structure give rise to different subclasses.

Biosynthesis: Derived from phenylalanine or tyrosine through enzymatic deamination to cinnamic acid, followed by various hydroxylation, methylation, or glycosylation reactions.

Chemical Properties:

Generally aromatic and hydrophobic.
Exhibit diverse functional groups, including hydroxyl (-OH), methoxy (-OCH_3), and glycosides.

Chemical Classes:

Phenylpropanoids are classified into several groups based on their structural modifications:
Simple Phenylpropanoids: Cinnamic acid, p-coumaric acid, ferulic acid, and caffeic acid.
Coumarins: Lactone derivatives of phenylpropanoids (e.g., umbelliferone, scopoletin).
Lignans and Lignins: Polymers formed by the oxidative coupling of phenylpropanoid units (e.g., pinoresinol, lignin in wood).
Flavonoids: A major subclass, including anthocyanins, flavones, and flavonols.
Stilbenes: Contain two aromatic rings connected by a two-carbon ethylene bridge (e.g., resveratrol).
Phenylpropanoid Glycosides: Phenylpropanoids bound to sugar moieties (e.g., acteoside).

Biological Sources:

Phenylpropanoids are ubiquitous in plants and are primarily found in:
Apiaceae (e.g., fennel, parsley).
Lamiaceae (e.g., mint, basil).
Asteraceae (e.g., sunflower, chamomile).
Fabaceae (e.g., soybeans).
Vitaceae (e.g., grapes, a source of resveratrol).

Methods of Extraction:

Solvent Extraction: Maceration or percolation with ethanol, methanol, or acetone for simple phenylpropanoids.
Ultrasonic-Assisted Extraction: Improves yield by breaking plant cell walls.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE): Uses supercritical CO_2 to extract phenylpropanoids efficiently.
Chromatographic Purification: High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) for separating phenylpropanoids.
Microwave-Assisted Extraction: An eco-friendly and efficient method for thermally stable compounds.

Therapeutic Uses:
Phenylpropanoids exhibit diverse pharmacological properties:
Antioxidant Activity: Scavenging free radicals (e.g., caffeic acid, ferulic acid).
Anti-inflammatory Effects: Inhibit inflammatory mediators (e.g., curcumin, resveratrol).
Antimicrobial and Antiviral: Effective against bacteria, fungi, and viruses (e.g., coumarins).
Cardioprotective: Resveratrol and lignans reduce cardiovascular risks.
Cancer Prevention: Chemopreventive agents like flavonoids and stilbenes.
Neuroprotective: Phenylpropanoids such as curcumin exhibit potential in neurodegenerative disorders.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceutical Industry: Development of drugs with antioxidant, anticancer, and anti-inflammatory properties.
Cosmetics: Used in anti-aging creams, sunscreens (e.g., ferulic acid, resveratrol).
Food and Beverages: Flavonoids and phenolic acids as natural preservatives and flavor enhancers.
Agriculture: Lignin provides structural support in plants, and phenylpropanoids serve as natural pesticides.
Nutraceuticals: Dietary supplements with phenylpropanoids like curcumin and resveratrol for health benefits.

Flavonoids:
Flavonoids are a group of polyphenolic secondary metabolites widely distributed in the plant kingdom. Known for their vibrant pigmentation and health-promoting properties, they play a crucial role in plant physiology, such as UV protection, pollinator attraction, and defense against pathogens. Flavonoids are also renowned for their therapeutic properties in human health, including antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and cardioprotective activities.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Structure:
Flavonoids share a common C6-C3-C6 skeleton, consisting of two aromatic rings (A and B) connected by a three-carbon bridge that forms a heterocyclic C-ring.

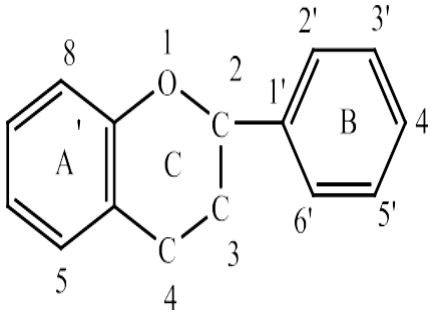


Figure: Basic Skeleton of Flavonoids

Chemical Properties:
Flavonoids are mostly yellow or orange pigments, though some subclasses contribute to red, blue, or purple hues (e.g., anthocyanins).
Contain hydroxyl (-OH) groups, contributing to their antioxidant activity.
Soluble in water (as glycosides) and organic solvents (as aglycones).

Classification:
Based on the degree of oxidation and substitution patterns in the C-ring, flavonoids are classified into several subgroups.
Chemical Classes of Flavonoids
Flavones: Example: Apigenin, luteolin. Found in parsley, celery.
Flavonols: Example: Quercetin, kaempferol. Found in onions, kale, apples.
Flavanones: Example: Naringenin, hesperidin. Found in citrus fruits.
Flavanols (Catechins): Example: Epicatechin, epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG). Found in green tea, cocoa.
Anthocyanins: Example: Cyanidin, delphinidin. Found in berries, red grapes.
Isoflavones: Example: Genistein, daidzein. Found in soybeans, legumes.
Chalcones: Example: Phloridzin. Found in apples, strawberries.

Biological Sources:
Flavonoids are widely distributed in plants, particularly in:
Fruits: Apples, oranges, berries, grapes.
Vegetables: Onions, spinach, broccoli.
Herbs and Spices: Parsley, thyme, rosemary.
Beverages: Tea (green and black), red wine, cocoa.
Legumes: Soybeans, lentils.

Methods of Extraction:
Solvent Extraction: Use of ethanol, methanol, or acetone to extract flavonoids from plant material.
Ultrasound-Assisted Extraction: Enhances yield and reduces time by breaking cell walls.
Microwave-Assisted Extraction: Efficient for thermally stable flavonoids.
Supercritical Fluid Extraction: Uses supercritical CO_2 for a clean and eco-friendly process.
Chromatographic Techniques: HPLC or thin-layer chromatography (TLC) for purification and quantification.

Therapeutic Uses:
Flavonoids exhibit a wide array of pharmacological activities:
Antioxidant: Neutralize free radicals, reducing oxidative stress (e.g., quercetin, EGCG).
Anti-inflammatory: Inhibit inflammatory mediators like COX-2 and TNF-α (e.g., apigenin, luteolin).
Cardioprotective: Improve heart health by reducing LDL oxidation and improving endothelial function (e.g., flavonols, anthocyanins).
Anticancer: Induce apoptosis and inhibit tumor growth (e.g., genistein, quercetin).
Antiviral and Antimicrobial: Effective against pathogens like bacteria, fungi, and viruses (e.g., catechins).
Neuroprotective: Prevent neurodegeneration in conditions like Alzheimer's and Parkinson's (e.g., kaempferol, resveratrol).
Antidiabetic: Enhance insulin sensitivity and glucose metabolism (e.g., naringenin, hesperidin).

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceutical Industry: Used in dietary supplements for their antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties.
Cosmetics: Incorporated in skincare products for anti-aging, UV protection, and pigmentation control (e.g., quercetin, rutin).
Food and Beverages: Natural colorants (e.g., anthocyanins) and preservatives.
Functional ingredients in health drinks (e.g., green tea catechins).
Agriculture: Used as natural pesticides and plant-growth regulators.
Nutraceuticals: Fortified foods and supplements to promote general health and well-being.

Lignans:

Lignans are low molecular weight polymers formed by the coupling of two phenylpropene units via their C3 side chains (figure 4.5) and between the aromatic ring and the C3 chain are known as lignans.

Cinnamyl alcohol (a common precursor of lignans) from free radicals and enzymatically dimerises to form aryl-tetralin-type lignan, whose examples are compounds like podophyllotoxin, 4-demethylpodophyllotoxin, and □-and □- peltatin (from Podophyllum peltatum and Podophyllum hexandrum of Berberidaceae family).

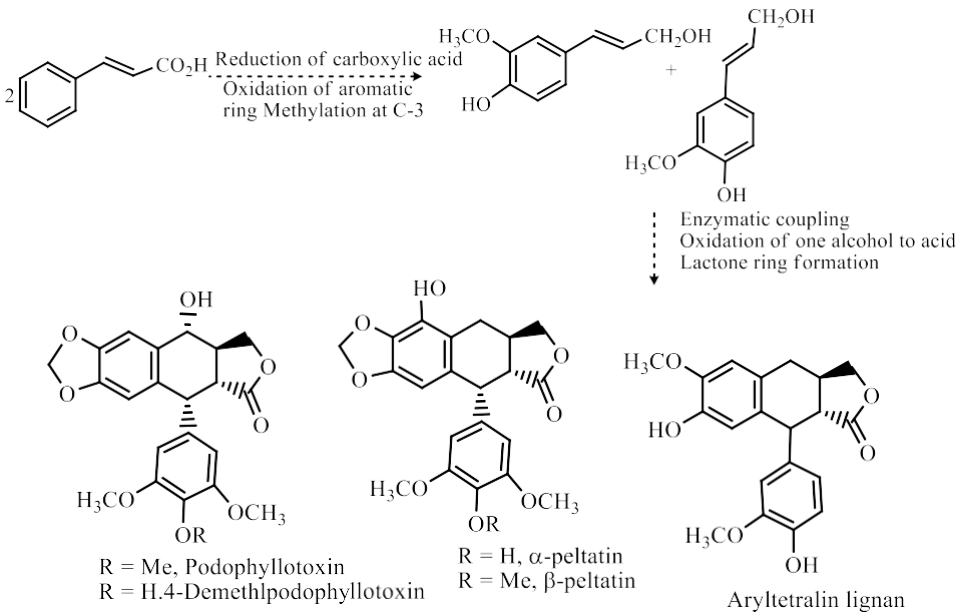


Figure: 4.5: Lignans Formed by the Coupling of Two Phenylpropene Units

Biosources:

Lignans are widely occurring plant compounds and are obtained from roots, heart wood, foliage, fruits, and resinous exudates of plants. They represent the d imer stage intermediate between the monomeric propylphenol units and lignin. The natural occurre nce of tri mers and tetramers has not been reported so far. However, occurrence of lignans in man and animals has been reported. In the roots and rhizomes of Podophyllum hexandrum Royle (Berberidaceae), □-lignan has been found.

Preparation:

Lignans are formed by the reduction of ferulic acid to coniferyl alcohol; and then through oxidative dimerisation of the coniferyl alcohol units and establishment of linkage via □-carbon atom of the C3 side chain.

Characteristic Features:

Lignans are found as single enantiomeric forms, i.e., as d - or l-isomers. Though, they als o occur as racemic produc ts, i.e., dl -forms. It has been found that with respect to their oxidation levels, degree of substitution, and structural complexity, lignans differ to a large extent.

Tea:

Tea is an evergreen shrub having several alternate branches. The leaves are pointed, lanceolate, or elliptically-oblong having short petiolate. The leaves have smooth surface on both sides with a shiny green appearance, a prominent midrib, and pinnately veined on one side.

Synonym: Folia thea.
Biological Source: Tea is the leaf buds and leaves of the plant Thea sinensis.
Family: Theaceae.

Figure: Tea-Herb

Geographical Source:
It is often found in the Sichuan provinces of China and northern part of Burma, and Yunnan.
Macroscopic Features:
In the young stage, lea ves are covered with silky hair, which disappear as they get mature. The surface becomes glabrous (almost) after the silky hair shed completely.
The length of a fully matured or comple tely grown tea leaf is about 5 -10cm. The upper surface of the leaf is glossy and dark green coloured. The outer lining is elliptical or lanceolate; the apex is acuminate or blunt; and the bases are tapering having a short stalk. The margins remain indistin ctly short and serrate with the serrations ending up as characteristically glandular teeth. These serrations break off readily and are generally absent in the fully grown leaves.
The commercial tea leaf is readily distinguished from other tea leaves as the bud ("flowery" Pekoe) still consists of several hair, whereas the larger and mature leaves become almost glabrous and smooth.

Microscopic Features:
The transverse section of the prominent midrib with a broad ridge above shows a discontinuous palisa de above the meristele with an arc of xylem. Phloem is present just below the xylem and this entire arrangement is covered by a band of pericyclic fibres. These fibres are slightly lignified, present in a number of 4, and are broad at the widest part. Roun ded parenchyma and numerous branching, lignified sclereids form the ground tissue.

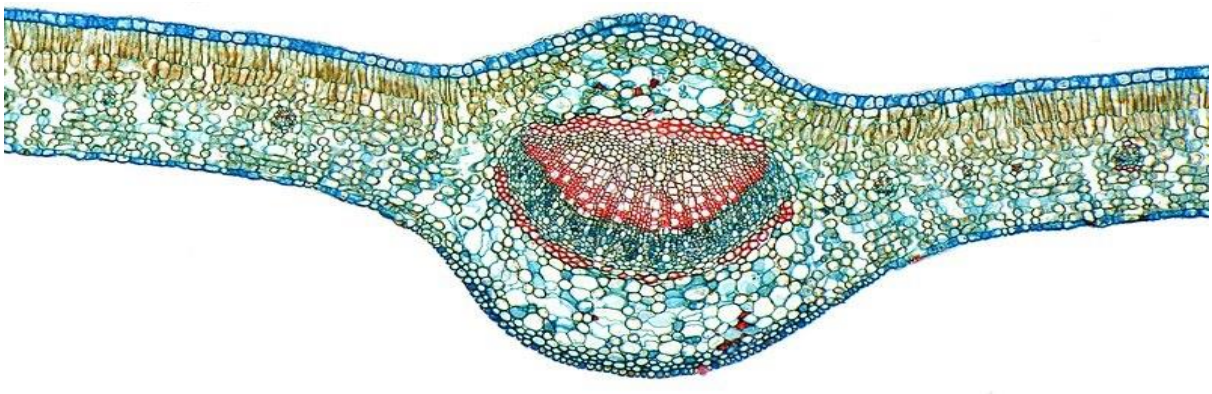


Figure: T.S of Midrib of C. Sinensis.

The epidermis is made up of polygonal cells having slightly wavy anticlinal walls. The lower surface of the leaves has numerous stomata. Each of these stomata i s surrounded by 3 narrow and tangentially elongated cells. The lower surface of young leaves bears a large number of unicellular, thick -walled, conical-linear trichomes.

Palisade is present in 2 rows in the mesophyll. Large lignified sclereids (idioblasts) are also found to be present across the mesophyll from one epidermis to the other.

Cluster of calcium oxalate crystals are scattered throughout the parenchyma and also in the phloem of meristele. Each of the charac teristic marginal teeth ends in a smal l conical point (glandular in nature) and consist s of an external palisade layer. This layer covers a small mass of polyhedral parenchyma. These conical points fall off in older leaves, leaving behind a brown scar.

Chemical Constituents:

The principal constituents are caffeine (trimethyl-xanthine) and tannin (10-24%). Adenine, theophylline, theobromine (dimethyl-xanthine) and its isomer, xanthine , and volatile oil are present in trace amounts. Percentage content of caffeine present in tea is 1 -5%, of which 9/10th part appears in combination with tannin. Later, water decomposes the combination complex, resulting in the liberation of caffeine. However, the percentage of free caffeine increases during the fermentation process.

Chemical Test:

Murexide Test: This test gives a positive result for tea as it is a purine alkaloid. Drug extract is taken in a petridish and potassium chlorate is added along with hydrochloric acid. The mixture is heated to dryness. The residue is exposed to dilute ammonia vapours result ing in a purple colour that disappears on addition of a fixed alkali.

Uses:

The prime pharmaceutical use of tea is as a caffeine source which produces stimulatory effect on the heart and nervous system. Caffeine also possesses diuretic activity but comparatively to a lesser extent than theobromine.

It is possibly effective in inhibiting angiogenesis which involves the process of supporting the growth of blood vessels required for the growth of tumour as well as metastasis.

Caffeine from tea leaves infusion when mixed with polyphenols (epigallocatechin-3-gallate) shows strong antioxidant and free-radical scavenging properties.

By inhibiting iron absorption by tannates and other ligands, caffeine helps in treating genetic haemochromatosis.

It also helps in treating diabetes -induced blindness, which is an angiogenic related condition.

It also plays a vital role in lowering the risk of ischemic heart disease in geriatrics.

Adulterants:

Foreign leaves and exhausted tea leaves are rolled and dried to be used as adulterants of tea.

Ruta

Originally native to the Mediterranean region , Ruta is an herbaceous perennial which is now cultivated in many parts of the world.

Synonym: Rue.

Biological Source: Ruta is obtained from the fresh and dried leaves of the plant Ruta graveolens L.

Family: Rutaceae.

Geographical Source:

It is originally from Mediterranean area and is distributed all around the world. The g enus Ruta has 14 approved species, of which R. graveolens L. and R. chalepensis L. are stated as I ndian floras. Several countries including India, cultivate Ruta graveolens as a medicinal and ornamental herb.

Macroscopic Features:

Ruta graveolens L. is a perennial, scented and glabrous herb or a sub -shrub. The aerial parts are powdered, aromatic,and pleasant. The colour of the bulk sample is mild to greyish green. The major pasrtof the bulk sampleare stem piecesand leaves:

Stem is slim, smooth, pale green, and goes upto 1m in height. Stem pieces are 15cm long and 5 mm thick. They are mild green externally and white internally. They are longitudinally contracted or flattened, hollow or have white luminous pith. They have a smooth surface, sharp in cut ends, woody and fibrous fracture.

Leaves are of alternate pattern, glaucous, compound, and 2-3 pinnate. They are a bit fragile and nearly powdery in the bulk sample. They are green to mild green to greyish green in colour, thin, papery, and have minute dots of dark green coloured glands everywhere.

Leaflets are linear, oval, or oblong. While handling they may get detached or fragmented.

Inflorescence is terminal corymbose with irregularly dichotomous cymes.

Flowers are bisexual and dull or dark yellow coloured. The terminal flowers are pentamerous and others are tetramerous.

Petals are wide ly spreading, distinct, undulate, greenish yellow in colour , wide and hooded at top, and connected to narrow claw below. They have a wavy and sometimes toothed margin.

Fruits are dry, hard and round. They are 4 or 5 lobed and have blunted tips.

Ruta chalepensis L. is somewhat similar in its morphology. It is differentiated from Ruta graveolens L. by its strong fetid smell, ciliate or fringed petals, and sharp fruit lobe tops.

Microscopic Features:

The microscopic description is applied to both the species until unless specified:

1. The TS of stem appears almost pentagonal in outline with dull corners.
2. It has a single layered outer epidermis followed by hypodermis (single layered), cortex, vascular zone, and central pith.
3. The cortex is differentiated into few layers of outer chlorenchyma and inner parenchyma.
4. The chlorenchyma is loosely arranged as aerenchyma with numerous air spaces.
5. The parenchyma is normal and has intercellular spaces.
6. The pericycle shows patches of lignified fibres.
7. In R. graveolens, the lumen of these fibres is wide and clearly visible; but in R. chalepensis, the lumen is narrow and represented as dot.
8. Usual elements are shown by the xylem and phloem.
9. The pith is large, parenchymatous, and undifferentiated.
10. The parenchyma cells of cortex and the chlorench yma region have minute starch grains.
11. No starch grains are present in the pith cells.
12. The parenchyma cells of cortex and pith in R. graveolens have limited calcium oxalate crystals; while R. chalepensis has abundance of calcium oxalate crystals.

Chemical Constituents:

The commonly known phytochemical compounds in R. graveolens are acridone alkaloids, coumarins, volatile substances, terpenoids, flavonoids, and fluoroquinolones. Saponin, tannins, and glycosides are also found to be present. In R. graveolens, the main active flavonoids are rutin and quercetin. Rutin was first isolated from the leaves of R. graveolens. Aliphatic acids, alcohols, and ketones are also found in high content in R. graveolens volatile oil.

The major components found in the essenti al oil of the flowering aerial parts of the plants are 2-undecanone (33.9%), 2-heptanol acetate (17.5%), 1-dodecanol (11.0%), geyrene (10.4%), 2-nonanone (8.8%), 2-decanone (1.9%), geijerene (1.6%), trans-piperitenone oxide (1.4%), cis-piperitenone oxide (1.2%), 2-methyl- undecanal (1.1%), 2-dodecanone (1.1%), 2-nonanol (1.1%), and elemol (1.1%).
R. graveolens produces high levels of linear furanocoumarins, mostl y psoralen and methoxypsoralen. Rutacridone, rutacridone epoxide, and gravacri dondiol (acridone alkaloids) are obtained from the roots ofR. graveolens , and graveoline (an alkaloid) is obtained from its leaves.

Uses:
It is used as an emmenagogue, haemostat, intestinal antispasmodic, sedative, uterine stimulant, vermifuge, rheum atism, and in cold and fever in Chinese medicine.
It is used as an aphrodisiac and choleretic in Poland.
It is used as a bitter, an aromatic stimulant, ecboli,cand for suppressing menses.

Chapter :5

Steroids, Cardiac Glycosides & Triterpenoids

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of Steroids, Cardiac Glycosides & Triterpenoids.
Liquorice, Dioscorea, Digitalis

Steroids

Steroids are a large group of naturally occurring organic compounds characterized by a specific arrangement of four fused cycloalkane rings (three cyclohexane and one cyclopentane). They are widely found in plants, animals, and fungi and play a crucial role in biological processes such as growth, metabolism, and immune response. Steroids are essential in pharmaceuticals, cosmetics, and other industries due to their diverse therapeutic applications.

Composition and General Chemistry:

Basic Structure:

Steroids have a cyclopentanoperhydrophenanthrene nucleus (also called a steroid nucleus), consisting of 17 carbon atoms arranged in four fused rings labeled A, B, C, and D.

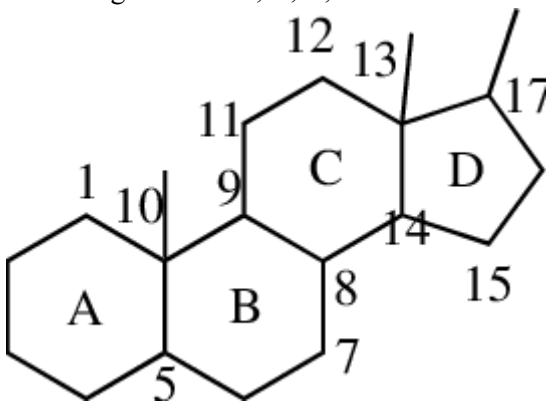


Figure: Basic Structure of Steroids

Chemical Properties:

Lipophilic and insoluble in water.
Functional groups attached to the core structure vary and determine the biological activity of the steroid.

Biosynthesis:

Derived from acetyl-CoA through the mevalonate pathway, leading to the formation of cholesterol, the precursor for most steroids.

Chemical Classes of Steroids:

1) Sterols: Contain a hydroxyl group (-OH) at the C3 position (e.g., cholesterol, ergosterol).
2) Sex Hormones: Include androgens, estrogens, and progestogens (e.g., testosterone, estradiol, progesterone).
3) Adrenal Cortical Steroids: Glucocorticoids (e.g., cortisol) and mineralocorticoids (e.g., aldosterone).
4) Bile Acids: Oxidized derivatives of cholesterol that aid in digestion (e.g., cholic acid).
5) Cardiac Glycosides: Steroidal compounds with glycosides attached, involved in heart activity (e.g., digoxin, digitoxin).
6) Vitamin D: Steroid derivatives essential for calcium metabolism (e.g., cholecalciferol).
7) Saponins: Steroidal glycosides found in plants with surfactant properties (e.g., diosgenin).

Biological Sources:
Animals: Cholesterol, bile acids, and steroid hormones are synthesized in animal tissues.
Plants: Phytosterols like sitosterol, stigmasterol, and diosgenin (precursor for synthetic steroids).
Fungi: Ergosterol, a precursor for vitamin D synthesis.
Microorganisms: Steroidal antibiotics like rifamycin.

Methods of Extraction:
Animal Sources: Steroids like cholesterol and bile acids are isolated from animal tissues.
Plant Sources: Solvent extraction (e.g., hexane, ethanol) for phytosterols.
Microbial Fermentation: Production of steroids like corticosteroids using microbial biotransformation.
Chromatographic Techniques: Thin-layer chromatography (TLC), high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), and gas chromatography (GC) for purification.

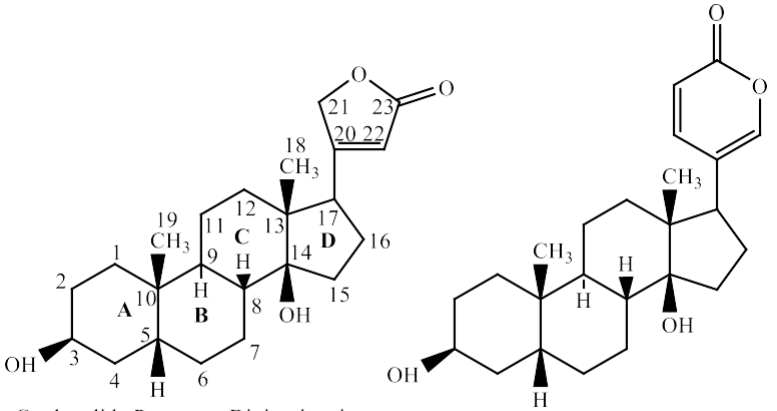
Therapeutic Uses
1) Anti-inflammatory: Corticosteroids (e.g., dexamethasone, prednisone) are widely used for inflammatory and autoimmune conditions.
2) Hormonal Replacement Therapy: Estrogens and progestins for menopause, testosterone for hypogonadism.
3) Contraception: Synthetic progestins and estrogens in oral contraceptives.
4) Cardiovascular Health: Cardiac glycosides like digoxin are used in the treatment of heart failure and arrhythmias.
5) Vitamin D Deficiency: Treatment of rickets, osteomalacia, and osteoporosis.
6) Cancer Therapy: Hormonal manipulation in cancers like breast and prostate cancer (e.g., tamoxifen, flutamide).
7) Anabolic Agents: Anabolic steroids (e.g., nandrolone) for muscle wasting and other catabolic conditions.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceutical Industry: Production of anti-inflammatory drugs, hormonal therapies, and anabolic steroids.
Cosmetic Industry: Steroids like cholesterol and lanolin derivatives in skincare products.
Agriculture: Steroid hormones for livestock growth promotion (regulated use).
Nutraceuticals: Phytosterols in functional foods to reduce cholesterol levels.

Cardiac Glycosides:
Cardiac glycosides are a class of naturally occurring secondary metabolites primarily derived from plants and certain animal species. They are well-known for their potent effects on the heart, specifically their ability to strengthen myocardial contraction (positive inotropic effect) and regulate heart rhythm. These compounds have been historically used to treat conditions such as congestive heart failure and arrhythmias.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Structure:
Cardiac glycosides consist of two main components:
Steroidal Aglycone (Genin): A steroid nucleus responsible for biological activity.
The structure varies between Cardenolides (five-membered lactone ring) and Bufadienolides (six-membered lactone ring).

Sugar Moiety:
One or more sugar residues (e.g., glucose, rhamnose, digitoxose).Affects solubility, absorption, and distribution.



Cardenolide Prototype Digitoxigenin

Bufadienolide Prototype (Bufalin)

Chemical Properties: Lipophilic aglycone and hydrophilic sugar moiety make cardiac glycosides amphipathic.
Typically crystalline, with varying water solubility depending on the number and type of sugar residues.

Chemical Classes of Cardiac Glycosides:
Cardenolides: Found in plants such as Digitalis purpurea (foxglove).
Example: Digoxin, digitoxin.
Bufadienolides: Found in toads (e.g., Bufo species) and certain plants like Scilla.
Example: Bufalin, scillaren.

Biological Sources
Plant Sources:
Digitalis species (D. purpurea, D. lanata): Digoxin, digitoxin.
Nerium oleander (oleander): Oleandrin.
Strophanthus species: Ouabain.
Calotropis procera: Calotropin.
Animal Sources:
Toad venom (Bufo species): Bufadienolides.

Methods of Extraction:
Plant Material Preparation: Leaves or seeds are air-dried and powdered.
Solvent Extraction: Polar solvents like methanol, ethanol, or water extract glycosides.
Partitioning: Organic solvents (e.g., chloroform, ethyl acetate) separate aglycones from glycosides.
Purification: Chromatographic techniques like TLC, HPLC, and column chromatography are used to isolate specific glycosides.

Therapeutic Uses:
Congestive Heart Failure (CHF): Positive inotropic effect enhances myocardial contraction.
Example: Digoxin is used to improve cardiac output.
Arrhythmias: Negative chronotropic effect slows heart rate by increasing vagal tone.
Useful in conditions like atrial fibrillation.
Edema: Historically used to reduce fluid retention in CHF patients.

Mechanism of Action:

Inhibition of Na^+/K^+-ATPase Pump: Cardiac glycosides inhibit the sodium-potassium pump in cardiac myocytes. This leads to increased intracellular sodium, reducing the sodium-calcium exchange and causing an accumulation of calcium in the cell. Elevated calcium levels enhance myocardial contractility.

Electrophysiological Effects: Slows conduction through the atrioventricular node. Prolongs the refractory period.

Commercial Applications:

Pharmaceutical Industry: Digoxin and digitoxin are widely used in heart failure and arrhythmia management.

Agricultural Sector: Some bufadienolides are being investigated as natural pesticides due to their toxicity to certain pests.

Toxic Effects:

Narrow Therapeutic Index: Cardiac glycosides have a high risk of toxicity, requiring precise dosing and monitoring.

Symptoms of Toxicity: Nausea, vomiting, visual disturbances (e.g., yellow-green halos), confusion, and arrhythmias.

Management of Toxicity: Discontinuation of the drug. Administration of digoxin-specific antibodies (e.g., Digibind).

Triterpenoids

Triterpenoids are a diverse class of secondary metabolites derived from the isoprenoid biosynthetic pathway. Comprising 30 carbon atoms arranged in six isoprene units, triterpenoids serve a variety of ecological and biological roles in plants, fungi, and some animals. Known for their structural diversity, these compounds exhibit a wide range of therapeutic properties, including anti-inflammatory, anticancer, antimicrobial, and hepatoprotective activities.

Composition and General Chemistry:

Basic Structure:

Composed of six isoprene units (C_5H_8).

Typically cyclized to form pentacyclic or tetracyclic structures, though some are acyclic.

Chemical Properties:

Lipophilic due to hydrocarbon skeletons.

Contain functional groups like hydroxyl (-OH), carboxyl (-COOH), and ketone (=O) that determine their biological activity.

Precursors and Biosynthesis:

Derived from squalene, an acyclic triterpene.

Cyclization of squalene via enzymatic reactions produces various triterpenoid scaffolds.

Chemical Classes of Triterpenoids:

Pentacyclic Triterpenoids:

Most common type, includes lupane, oleanane, ursane, and friedelane skeletons.

Example: Betulinic acid, oleanolic acid, ursolic acid.

Tetracyclic Triterpenoids:

Includes dammarane and cucurbitane skeletons.

Example: Ginsenosides (dammarane type), cucurbitacins.

Steroidal Triterpenoids:
Cyclization leads to steroids, a subclass of triterpenoids.
Example: Lanosterol, precursor for cholesterol.

Acyclic Triterpenoids:
Linear structures.
Example: Squalene.

Biological Sources:
Plants: Found in the bark, leaves, and fruits of plants.
Example: Betulinic acid from Betula species (birch trees), oleanolic acid from Olea europaea (olive).
Fungi: Triterpenoids like ganoderic acids from Ganoderma lucidum (reishi mushroom).
Marine Organisms: Some triterpenoids are derived from marine sponges and algae.

Methods of Extraction:
Plant Material Preparation: Plant parts like leaves, bark, or fruits are dried and powdered.
Solvent Extraction: Non-polar solvents like hexane or chloroform extract triterpenoids due to their lipophilic nature.
Partitioning and Purification: Fractionation using solvents of increasing polarity (e.g., ethyl acetate, methanol). Purified using chromatographic techniques like HPLC, TLC, or column chromatography.

Structural Characterization:
Spectroscopic methods like NMR, MS, and IR confirm the chemical structure.

Therapeutic Uses:
1) Anti-inflammatory: Triterpenoids like oleanolic acid and ursolic acid inhibit inflammatory mediators.
2) Anticancer: Betulinic acid induces apoptosis in cancer cells.
3) Ginsenosides show cytotoxic effects against various cancer types.
4) Antimicrobial: Exhibit antibacterial, antiviral, and antifungal activities.
5) Example: Cucurbitacins as potent antimicrobial agents.
6) Hepatoprotective: Oleanolic acid protects against liver damage caused by toxins or infections.
7) Cardioprotective: Some triterpenoids improve cardiovascular health by reducing cholesterol and oxidative stress.
8) Adaptogenic: Ginsenosides from Panax ginseng enhance physical and mental endurance.

Commercial Applications:
1) Pharmaceutical Industry:
   Development of anti-inflammatory, anticancer, and hepatoprotective drugs.
2) Cosmetic Industry:
   Anti-aging and skin-repair formulations (e.g., creams containing ursolic acid).
3) Nutraceuticals:
   Ginsenosides as dietary supplements to improve health and immunity.
4) Agriculture:
   Triterpenoids as biopesticides due to their toxicity to pests.

Liquorice

Liquorice is a perennial herb cultivated in the Mediterranean region and Central and South -West Asia for its sweet taproot (thus, also termed sweet root). The plant gives purple with white coloured flowers and its roots grow to a depth of 4 feet (1.2m).

Synonyms: Radix glycyrrhizae and Sweet liquorice.

Biological Source: Liquorice is subterranean dried peeled or unpeeled roots and stolon of different varieties of Glycyrrhiza glabra.

Family: Leguminosae.

Geographical Source:

On a large scale, it is cultivated in Spain, Sicily and Yorkshire (England). Other species of liquorice like G. glabra var violaceae is found in Iran, while G. glabra var glandulifera is cultivated in Russia and is named the Russian Liquorice. In Asian continent, it is cultivated in India (sub-Himalayan tracts) and Baluchistan.

Macroscopic Features

1. Size: Several feet in length, varies in thickness from ¼ to about 1 inch, and longitudinally wrinkled.
2. Shape: Liquorice root is long, straight, nearly cylindrical, and occurs as unpeeled pieces.
3. Colour: Externally greyish brown to dark brown.
4. Taste: Sweet and very slightly acrid.
5. Odour: Weak and somewhat aromatic.
6. Fruit: Legume.

Microscopic Features

When examined under microscope, stolon of liquorice shows the following characteristics:

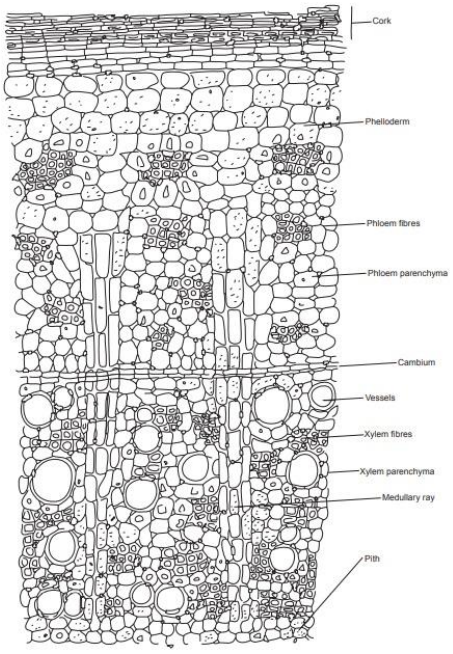


Figure: Glycyrrhiza Glabra (T.S. of Stolon)

1. Outer Surface: The outer surface of the unpeeled drug consists of around 10 rows of narrow cork cells.
2. Cork Cells: These are rapidly arranged and thin-walled, polygonal in nature, beneath which there may be a few parenchyma rows forming the cortex.
3. Parenchymatous Pericycle: It has small groups of fibres at intervals.

4. Phloem Fibres: These are t hick-walled, lignified occur in cylindrical bundles altering with sieve-tissue, which in the outer part is collapsed to form ceratenchyma. Sieve tubes are clear near the cambium.
5. Xylem: It consists of strongly lignified xylem fibres and vessels wi th little xylem parenchyma. The xylem -vessel walls are thickly covered with bordered pits having slit-like openings.
6. Medullary Rays: These are composed of cellulosic parenchyma having rectangular and radially elongated cells. Many parenchymatous cells, occurring in longitudinal rows adjacent to the fibres of phloem and xylem, are small in size and contains a solitary prism of calcium oxalate. All the parenchyma cells contain either calcium oxalate crystals or starch.
7. Pith: It is parenchymatous.

The microscopical characters of roots are similar to st olon, except that at the centre small four primary xylem bundles are present at right angles to each other, with protoxylem directed outwards. In root, beneath the cork, phelloderm may be present.

Chemical Constituents:
The main constituent of liquorice is glycyrrhizin (6-8%) obtainable in the form of sweet (50 times sweeter than sucrose) white crystalline powder consisting of calcium and potassium salt of glycyrrhizic acid. Glycyrrhizic acid on hydrolysis yields glycyrrhetic or glycyrrhetinic acid.
It also contains two flavonoids, i.e., liquiritin and isoliquiritin. The fla vonoids are responsible for its anti-gastric effect and are used in peptic ulcer treatment.

Chemical Tests:
On addition of 80% sulphuric acid to a section or powder of the drug, orange yellow colour is produced due to the transformation of liquiritin (flavone glycoside) to isoliquiritin (chalcone glycoside).
Powdered drug on reacting with water in the presence of KOH gives a red colour.

Uses:
1) It is used as a sweetening agent and in bronchial problems (flu and coughs).
2) It is used as an expectorant and demulcent.
3) It is used in peptic ulcer and as an antispasmodic.
4) It is used as a flavouring agent for chewing tobacco and snuff tobacco.
5) Its prolonged use raises the blood pressure and causes water retention.
6) Its root is used externally in the treatment of herpes and eczema.

Substitutes and Adulterants:
Manchurian liquorice is obtained from Glycyrrhiza uralensis. It is pale chocolate brown in colour with exfoliated cork and wavy medullary rays. It is free from sugar, but contains glycyrrhizin.
Russian liquorice may be peeled and obtained from Glycyrrhiza glabra variety Glandulifera. The drug is purplish in colour with numerous long roots, but no stolons.

Dioscorea
In the family Dioscoreaceae, around six hundred species of flowering plants are classified under the genus Dioscorea. The genus is named after the ancient Greek physician and botanist, Dioscorides.
Synonyms: Yam, Kins, and Singli-mingli.
Biological Source: Dioscorea is the dried rhizome of several species of Dioscorea like Dioscorea deltoidea , D. composita, and other species of Dioscorea.
Family: Dioscoreaceae.

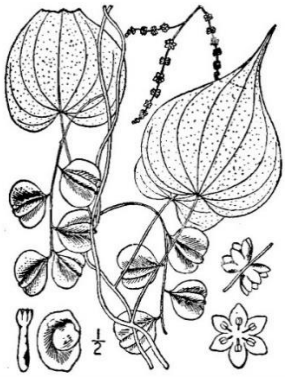


Figure: Dioscorea Deltoidea

Geographical Source:

The vast majority of the species are tropical, and only a few species extend into temperate climates. It is cultivated in North America, Japan, China, Mexico, India, and Nepal. In India, it grows widel y in Western Himalayas, Karnataka, Jammu and Kashmir, Maharashtra, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal, etc.

Macroscopic Features:

Colour: Slightly brown.
Odour: Odourless.
Taste: Bitter.
Size: Varies depending upon age of rhizomes.

Microscopic Features:

Epidermis is normally absent in the transverse section of the drug. The cork consists of only a few layers, followed by thin walled cortical parenchymatous tissue. Stele forms the major part of the drug and consists of several close collateral fibro-vascular bundles. Endodermis and pericycle are indistinguishable.

Chemical Constituents:

It mainly contains diosgenin (a steroidal sapogenin), epismilagenin (its glycoside), and yamogenin (a β-isomer). It also contains sapogenase, phenolic compounds. and starch.

Chemical Tests:

When diosgenin (a steroidal sapogenin) is treated with acetic anhydride in the presence of sulphuric acid, it gives a bluish green colour.

Uses:

It is a major source of diosgenin which is used for the manufacture of progesterone and other steroid al drugs. These are used as contraceptives and in diseases like asthma and arthritis.

Substitutes and Adulterants:

Dioscorea flo ribunda is cultivated in Central America and India (Karnataka State). It contains 3 -5% of diosgenin. D. villosa Linne mainly from Virginia and Carolina in U.S.A. is also very rich in diosgenin. D. villosa is a twining perennial herb with beautiful yellow flowers and triangular capsules. Sikkimensis Prain occurs in Eastern Himalayas, Nepal, Sikkim, Bhutan, Assam, Bihar and Bengal up to an altitude of 1600 - 2000mt. It contains 2 -2.8% of diosgenin. Costus speciosus is an alternative potential source for diosgenin (1.5%) and can be used as a substitute for the genuine drug.

Digitalis

The genus Digitalis has around twenty species of herbaceous, perennial or biennial shrubs. The digitalis plant is also known as foxgloves.

Synonyms: Digitalis leaves and Foxglove leaves.
Biological Source: Digitalis is the dried leaves of Digitalis purpurea, dried at a temperature below 60°C, immediately after collection. The leaves should not contain more than 5% of moisture.
Family: Scrophulariaceae.

Geographical Source
It is cultivated in European countries like England, France, Germany, North America, and India. In India, it is grown in Kashmir and Nilgiri Hills.

Figure: Digitalis Purpurea

Macroscopic Features:
Colour: Dorsal surface is deep green and greyish, but ventral surface is pale green and more greyish.
Odour: Slight characteristic.
Taste: Bitter.
Size: Length 10-40cm and width 4-20cm.
Shape: Ovate (egg-shaped), lanceolate (like a lance much longer than broad, widest in the middle, and tapering. Apex is pointed. Margin of the lea f is serrated or crenate (broad rounded teeth). Tips are obtuse (rounded with narrow spaces). Petiole is small and winged.

Microscopic Features:
Digitalis is a dorsiventral leaf. It has anomocytic stomata on both surfaces and water pores at the apex of most of the marginal teeth. The trichomes are uniseriate, multicellular (3 to 5 cells) and bluntly pointed.There are also glandular trichomes with unicellular stalk and unicellular or cellular head. The glandular trichomes are generally located over the veins.

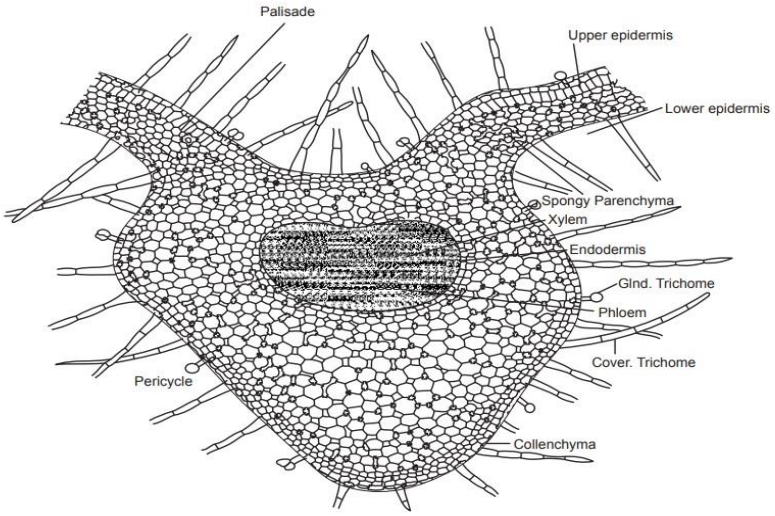


Figure: T.S. of digitalis Leaf

Collapsed celled covering trichome is an important characteristic of digitalis. Digitalis is free of calcium oxalate crystals and sclerenchyma. Starch grains are present in the endodermis. There is collenchyma at 3 different places, i.e., at the upper epidermis, lower epidermis, and pericyclic part.

Chemical Constituents:

Digitalis contains 0.2 -0.45% mixtures of both primary and secondary cardiac glycosides (cardenolides). Purpurea glycosides A and B and glucogitaloxin are primary glycos ides possessing at C -3 of the aglycone, a linear chain of 3 digitoxose moieties terminated by glucose. Digitalis also contains several other glycosides such as odoroside H, gitaloxin, verodoxin, and glucoverodoxin.

Additionally, it contains 2 saponin glycosides, viz. digitonin and gitonin. The total number of glycosides reported in the drug is about 30. Apart from the glycosides, leaves also contain hydrolytic enzymes.

Chemical Tests:

Keller-Kiliani Test for Digitoxose: In this test, about 1gm finely powdered digitalis is boiled with 10 ml 70% alcohol for 2 -3 minutes. The extract is filtered and the filtrate is added to 5ml water and 0.5ml strong solution of lead acetate. The mixture is s haken well and the filtrate is separated . T he clear filtrate is treated with an equal volume of chloroform and evaporated to yield the extractive. The extractive is dissolved in glacial acetic acid and after cooling, 2 drops ferric chloride solution is added to it. These contents are transferred to a test tube containing 2ml of concentrated sulphuric acid. A reddish brown layer acquiring bluish -green colour after standing is observed due to the presence of digitoxose.

Legal Test: The extract is dissolved in pyridine, sodium nitroprusside solution is added to it and made alkaline. A pink or red colour is produced.Baljet Test: To a section of digitalis, sodium picrate solution is added. It shows yellow to orange colour.Keddes Reagent: Cardenolides react with this reagent to give blue or violet colour. Raymond's Test: Digitalis is dissolved in 1ml of 50% ethanol and 0.1ml of 1% solution of dinitrobenzene in ethanol or methanol is added. 2 -3 drops of 20% NaOH are added to the mi xture. A violet colour is produced which changes to blue. Tollen's Test: On dissolving the g lycoside in a mixture of pyridine and ammoniacal silver nitrate solution, a precipitate of silver is obtained.

Uses:

Digitalis has its major therapeutic effect by increasing the force and velocity of contraction of the normal and failing h eart. The clinical syndrome of congestive heart failure results from the inability of heart to pump sufficient blood to meet the body‟s needs. Digitalis increases the activity of cardiac muscles.

Substitutes:

Adonidin: The active principle of Adonis vernalis (Ranunculaceae family) is a glucoside. Adonidin acts more quickly and powerfully than digitalis, and in some instances, it has more curative power.

Foxglove: As digitalis, it has held its place as one of the most valuable remedies that come from the ve getable kingdom, and the art of using it has been steadily improved over the course of time.

Adulterants:

Common Mullein Leaves: The leaves of Verbascum thapsus (Scrophulariaceae) are mixed with the genuine drug and can be distinguished microscopically bythe presence of large woolly branched candelabra trichomes.

Primrose Leaves: The leaves of Primula vulgaris (Primulaceae) are added to digitalis. They can be detected microscopically by the presence of uniseriate covering trichomes, which are 8 -9 celled long. The lateral veins of the leaves of primrose are straight.

Comfrey Leaves:These are the leaves of Symphytum officinale (Boraginaceae) and can be detected by the presence of multicellular trichomes forming hook at the top.

Chapter:6
Volatile oils

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of Volatile oils.
Mentha, Clove, Cinnamon, Fennel, Coriander

Volatile Oils
Volatile oils, also known as essential oils, are concentrated hydrophobic liquids containing aromatic compounds derived from plants. These oils are responsible for the fragrance and flavor of plants and serve ecological roles, such as attracting pollinators or deterring herbivores. They are widely used in medicine, aromatherapy, cosmetics, and the food industry due to their therapeutic and aromatic properties.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Components:
Volatile oils are composed of a mixture of low molecular weight compounds.
Major classes of compounds include terpenes (monoterpenes, sesquiterpenes) and phenylpropanoids.

Chemical Properties:
Highly volatile and evaporate at room temperature.
Insoluble in water but soluble in organic solvents like ethanol, ether, and chloroform.
Exhibit characteristic aromas.

Functional Groups:
May contain alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, esters, phenols, and hydrocarbons.
These functional groups contribute to the biological activity of volatile oils.

Chemical Classes of Volatile Oils:
Monoterpenes:
Contain 10 carbon atoms.
Example: Limonene, pinene.

Sesquiterpenes:
Contain 15 carbon atoms.
Example: Farnesene, humulene.

Phenylpropanoids:
Derived from the shikimate pathway.
Example: Eugenol, cinnamaldehyde.

Oxidized Compounds:
Include alcohols, ketones, and esters.
Example: Menthol (alcohol), camphor (ketone).

Biological Sources:
Plant Families Rich in Volatile Oils:
Lamiaceae: Basil (Ocimum basilicum), mint (Mentha species).
Rutaceae: Citrus fruits (Citrus species).

Apiaceae: Fennel (Foeniculum vulgare), coriander (Coriandrum sativum).
Myrtaceae: Eucalyptus (Eucalyptus globulus).

Parts of Plants:
Leaves (e.g., eucalyptus).
Flowers (e.g., lavender).
Fruits (e.g., orange peel).
Seeds (e.g., fennel).
Bark (e.g., cinnamon).

Methods of Extraction:
Steam Distillation:
Most common method.
Plant material is exposed to steam, and volatile compounds are condensed into essential oil.

Hydrodistillation:
Plant material is boiled in water, and the steam carries the oil, which is collected after condensation.
Cold Pressing:
Used for citrus oils.
Oil is extracted by mechanical pressing of peels.

Solvent Extraction:
Organic solvents like hexane are used to extract heat-sensitive oils.
Residual solvent is removed to yield the oil.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction:
Uses supercritical CO_2 as the solvent.
Produces high-quality oils without residual solvents.

Therapeutic Uses:
Antimicrobial: Many volatile oils exhibit antibacterial, antifungal, and antiviral properties. Example: Tea tree oil (Melaleuca alternifolia).
Anti-inflammatory: Reduce inflammation and swelling. Example: Chamomile oil (Matricaria chamomilla).
Analgesic: Relieve pain. Example: Clove oil (Syzygium aromaticum) for dental pain.
Respiratory Relief: Eucalyptus oil for clearing nasal congestion.
Stress and Anxiety Reduction: Lavender oil (Lavandula angustifolia) in aromatherapy.
Digestive Aid: Peppermint oil (Mentha piperita) for irritable bowel syndrome (IBS).

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceutical Industry: Incorporated into balms, inhalers, and liniments for respiratory and musculoskeletal disorders.
Cosmetics: Used in perfumes, soaps, and skincare products for fragrance and therapeutic properties.
Food and Beverage Industry: Serve as flavoring agents (e.g., vanilla, cinnamon).
Aromatherapy: Essential oils are used to promote relaxation, alleviate stress, and improve sleep quality.
Agriculture: Natural pesticides due to insect-repellent properties (e.g., citronella oil).

Mentha

Mentha is the oldest known species of medic inal plant in Eastern and Western traditions. Other than its use asa flavouring agent (from che wing gum to after dinner mints), it is also used in cosmetics and other pharmaceutical products.

Synonyms: Oleum mentha piperita, Colpermin, and Mentha oil.

Biological Source: The oil is obtained by the steam distillation of fresh flowering tops of the plant Mentha piperita Linn. The oil is rectified if required. Mentha oil should contain not less than 50% of total menthol.

Family: Labiatae.

Geographical Source:

Species of mentha are cultivated in different parts of the world. It grows wildly in Europe, and is cultivated in Japan, England, France, Italy, U.S.A., Bulgaria, and U.S.S.R. It is cultivated near Jammu an d in Tarai region of Uttar Pradesh in India.

Figure: Mentha Plant (Mentha piperita)

1) Mentha plants are dried to 1/4 th of their weight to reduce the bulk. This saves the distillation time and decreases production cost. Drying in direct sunlight causes loss of volatile oil.
2) While drying the herb, it should not undergo fermentation, or else the quality and quantity of oil will be severely affected.
3) The material dried in air is charged into galvanised iron or mild-steel still having a false perforated bottom (especially designed for this purpose).
4) Steam under pressure is generated with a boiler, and passed through the drug, which takes around 3-4 hours for distillation.
5) During the first half of distillation, more than 80% of the oil is distilled off.
6) Distillation should be carefully finished because menthol obtained in the final stage of distillation is medicinally and commercially important.
7) The condenser used should be of aluminium or stainless steel. It should be coiled to increase the area of condensation. Collection of the distillate, i.e., mentha oil is done in separating can.
8) Mentha oil floats in the separating can being lighter in weight and insoluble in water. This oil is decanted and filtered.

The average oil content of the herb is approximately 0.5 -1% (v/w). For commercial purposes, around 100kg of the oil per hectare of the crop per year is satisfactory.

Macroscopic Features:
Colour: Colourless to yellow.
Odour: Characteristic and pleasant.
Taste: Pungent followed by cooling sensation.
Solubility: Soluble in 70% alcohol, ether and chloroform; insoluble in water.

Microscopic Features:
Leaves are the most important p art from which oil is extracted. Its upper epidermis comprises of large, clear epidermal cel ls with sinuous, vertical walls, few or no stomata, and a few glandular trichomes. Palisade parenchyma comprises of a layer of columnar cells having abundant chloroplasts. Spongy parenchyma comprises of 4-6 layers of irregularly shaped cells containing chloroplastids and intercellular airspaces. Lower epidermis comprises of small epidermal cells having sinuous, vertical walls and numerous diacytic stomata. Non-glandular and glandular trichomes are present as outgrowths in the region of veins and midrib. The non-glandular trichomes are uniseriate, papillose, and 1-8- celled; while the glandular trichomes have 1-2-celled stalk and 1-8-celled glandular head containing thevolatile oil. Calcium oxalate crystals are not present.

Chemical Constituents:
The chief constituent of mentha oil is L-menthol which exists 70% in free form and also in form of esters depending on the variety (like American, Japanese, and Indian). American variety contains 80% of menthol and the Japanese variety contains 70 -90% of menthol. Menthone, menthofuran, jasmine, menthyl isovalerate, menthyl acetate, and many other terpene derivatives are other important constituents of mentha oil. Other te rpenes include L -limonene, isopelugol, cineole, pinene, c amphene, etc. The pleasant flavour of mentha oil is because of jasmone and esters; and its dirty smell is due to resinification caused by menthofuran.

Chemical Test:
A few drops of peppermint oil are mixed with 5ml of nitric acid solution (prepared by mixing 1ml of nitric acid with 300ml of glacial acetic acid). The resultant mixture is heated on water bath. A blue colour appears within five minutes of heating. On further heating, the blue colour darkens to copper colour fluorescence, which becomes golden yellow after some time to give a clear and transparent liquid.

Uses:
It is used as a carminative, stimulant and flavouring agent.
It shows mild antiseptic properties.
It is used in toothpaste s, tooth powders, shaving creams, and in various pharmaceutical dosage forms.
It is also used for preparing chewing gums, candies, jellies, perfumes, and essences.
It possesses calcium channel blocking activity which produces spasmolytic and smooth muscle relaxant effects. Therefore, it is used in irritable bow el syndrome.
Due to its muscle relaxant activity, mentha oil is used to relieve spasm during endoscopy of colon.
It stimulates the bile flow, thus exhibits digestant activity.
Azulene present in the leaves shows anti-inflammatory and anti -ulcer activity.
It is considered by U.S.F.D.A. as Generally Regarded as Safe (GRAS) as a nasal decongestant.
It is used for inhalation in steam, and in topical products and lozenges for its antitussive properties.

Substitutes and Adulterants:
Many species of mentha contain oil, and sometimes these oils are de-mentholised and used as drug adulterants.

Mentha oil is generally adulterated with cornmint (difficult to detect even at 85%) and is the most adulterated oil.

Clove:
The unopened pink coloured buds of c loves are found in evergreen clove trees. Same as the other spices, they are available throughout the year. Cloves are known to provide a warm, sweet and aromatic taste.
Synonyms: Caryophyllum, Clove flower, and Clove buds.

Biological Source: Clove is the dried flower buds of the plant Eugenia caryophyllus and should contain 15% (v/w) or more of clove oil.
Family: Myrtaceae.

Geographical Source
Cloves were initially grown in the regions of Amboyna and Molucca islands. In the recent times, they are cultivated in Zanzibar, Pemba Penang, Madagascar, Caribbean islands, Sri Lanka , and India. Nilgiri, Tenkasi -hills and in Kanyakumari district of Tamil Nadu state are the regions in India where cloves are grown. Kottayam and Quilon districts of Kerala are also famous for their cultivation.

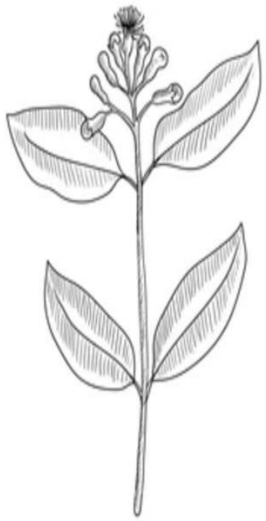


Figure: Eugenia caryophyllus Linn

Macroscopic Features:
Colour: Crimson to dark brown.
Odour: Slightly aromatic.
Taste: Pungent and aromatic followed by numbness.
Size: About 10-17.5mm in length, 4mm in width, and 2mm thick.
Shape: Hypanthium is surmounted with 4 thick acute divergent sepals. These sepals are covered by dome - shaped corolla which consists of unexpanded membranous petals, several stamens, and a single stiff prominent style.
Density: Cloves are heavier than water.
Specific Gravity: 1.038-1.06.
Refractive Index: 1.527-1.535.
The oil is colourless to pale yellow in colour. During storage it becomes thick and darker in colour.

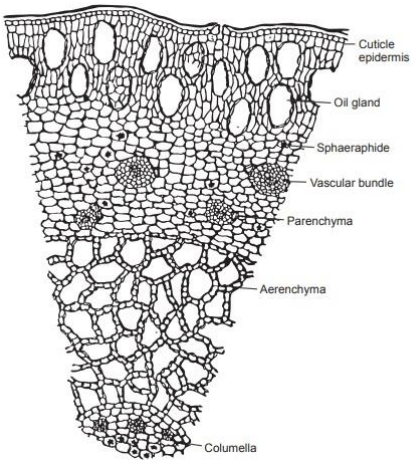


Figure: Transverse Section of Clove

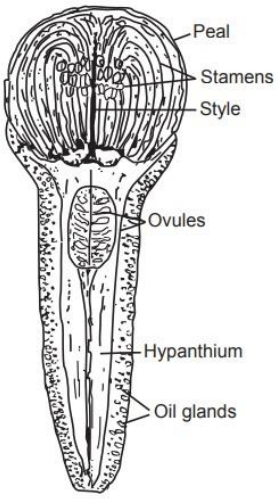


Figure: Longitudinal Section of Clove

Microscopic Features:

The epidermis of clove has a thick cuticle c overing and is composed of a large anomocytic stomata and straight walled cells. Schizolysigenous and ovoid - shaped oil glands are present in almost all portions of the drug. The isolated phloem fibres are rarely found in the spongy tissue. Calcium oxalate crystals with small number of stone cells are also found in clove. Starch grains are absent.

Chemical Constituents:

Clove contains about 15 -20% of volatile oil and 10 -13% of tannin in the form of gallotannic acid, resin, chromone, and eugenin. About 70 -90% of eugenol, eugenol acetate , caryophyllenes and trace amounts of esters, ketones, and alcohols are present in the volatile oil of clove.

Chemical Test:

On treating the transverse section of clove with strong potassium hydroxide solution, it shows needle-shaped crystals of potassium eugenate.

Uses:

Clove is used as:
Dental analgesic,
Carminative,
Stimulant,

Flavouring agent, and
Aromatic and antiseptic.
It is also used for preparing cigarettes.
Clove oil is used in perfumery and in the production of vanillin.

Adulterants:
Mother Cloves: These are ovate ripened fruits of clove tree appearing dark brown in colour. These cloves are slightly aromatic. Starch grains and minimum quantity of volatile oil are present in them.
Blown Cloves: These are lengthened flowers of the clove tree with separated stamens. These cloves include volatile oil (in content less than that of the authentic drug) and their colour is similar to that of cloves.
Clove Stalks: These adulterate the powdered cloves and get easily mixed with cloves as they are similar in colour, odour, and taste. The presence of isodiametric sclereids and calcium oxalate prisms helps in their detection. They possess high content of ash value and crude fibres. To pass the Pharmacopoeial limit, the authenti c cloves are required to contain less than 5% of clove stalks. Only 5% of oil is present in clove stalks.
Exhausted Cloves: These cloves are darker in appearance and are more shrunken. When exhausted cloves are pressed with finger nails, oil does not exude out as it has been removed by distillation. These cloves float on water.

Cinnamon
Clove obtained from the inner bark of the trees of genus Cinnamomum is majorly used in sweet and savoury foods.
Synonyms: Cinnamon bark, Kalmi-Dalchini, and Ceylon cinnamon.
Biological Source: Cinnamon is the dried inner bark of the shoots of coppiced trees of Cinnamomum zeylanicum Nees., (syn. Cinnamomum verum) and should contain 1.0% or more of volatile oil.
Family: Lauraceae.

Geographical Source:
Originally, the spice cinnamon was found near Sri Lanka and Malabar Coast of India. Jamaica and Brazil are also the sites of cinnamon. But mostly the demand of cinnamon is fulfilled by Sri L anka, therefore, a true cinnamon is referred to as Sri Lanka cinnamon.

Figure: Cinnamon Plant

Macroscopic Features:
Colour: The outer surface is dull yellowish-brown, while the inner surface is dark yellowish-brown.
Odour: Fragrant.
Shape: Found in the form of compound quills.
Size: About 1m in length, 1cm in diameter, and 0.5mm in thickness.
Taste: Aromatic and sweet followed by warm sensation.

Fracture: Splintery.
Surface: On the outer surface of bark , wavy longitudinal striations with small holes of scars left by the branches are present, while on the inner surface longitudinal striations are found.

Microscopic Features:
Since cinnamon is an inner bark, i t lacks cork and primary cortex (figure 5.8). However, patches of primary cortex may be observed in rare cases.
Sclerenchymatous pericycle is present. The stelar portion of the cork contains phloem, phloem fibres, biseriate medullary rays, and secretory cavities with volatile oil and mucilage. In cortical parenchyma and medullary rays, starch grains are found. In the cells of parenchyma, calcium oxalate crystals have been observed.

Chemical Constituents:
The crude drug contains many essential constituents such as volatile oil (0.5- 1.0%) and phlobatannins (1.2%). Other constituents found in cinnamon bark are mucilage, calcium oxalate, starch grains, and mannitol. Among these, volatile oil is considered to be the active constituent which on distillation appears light yellow in colour. However, it changes its colour during storage and becomes red. Cinnamon bark yields Cinnamon oil (yellow to red in colour) is composed of a variety of constituents such as cinnamaldehyde (60-70%), eugenol (5-10%), benzaldehyde, cuminaldehyde, and terpenes (phellandrene, pinene, cymnee, caryophyllene, etc.).

Chemical Test:
When a drop of ferric chloride solution is added to a drop of volatile oil, a pale green colour appears. This colour is achieved as cinnamic aldehyde on reacting with ferric chloride gives brown colour and eugenol yields blue colour. The pale green colour is the combination of brown and blue colours.It yields brown colour with oil of cassia due to the presence of cinnamic aldehyde.

Uses:
It is highly enriched in carminative, stomachic, and mild astringent propertie. s
It has anti-inflammatory properties.
It also has anti-diabetic properties.
It acts as an anti-ulcer agent, and is active against H. pylori.
It is anti-microbial in nature, inhibit the growth of yeast, bacteria, fungi, etc.
It helps in reducing LDL levels and increasing HDL levels, thus lowers cholesterol levels.
It may be employed as a flavouring agent, stimulant, an aromatic, and an antiseptic.
Its anti-oxidant properties protect from the damaging effects of free radicals.
On a commercial scale, cinnamon bark is commonly employed as a spice and condiment.
The oil is also used in candies, dentifrices, and perfume preparations.
It has beentraditionally used in alleviating gastric disorders and dysmenorrhea.

Adulterants and Substitutes:
Jungle Cinnamon: The main source of this cinnamon bark is wild trees. It is generally dark coloured, less aromatic than the cultivated trees, and slightly bitter in taste.
Cinnamon Chips: These pieces are obtained from untrimmed bark. They are different from the authentic drug as they show the presence of a large number of cork cells.
Saigon Cinnamon: It is the tree bark of Cinnamomum loureirii, belonging to the family Lauraceae and is exported from the port of Saigon. China and Japan are the countries which also favour the g rowth of this cinnamon. Its bark has a sweet taste and is greyish-brown in colour with light patches on it. Quills are unpeeled (30 × 4 × 0.7cm) and contain 2.5% of volatile oil.

Java Cinnamon: It is obtained from the bark of Cinnamomum burmannii, belonging to the family Lauraceae. The main characteristic of this cinnamon is that the bark is peeled, present as double quills, and is less aromatic. Histologically, small tubular crystals of calcium oxalate (not found in the species of C. zeylanicum) are present in medullary rays. The Java cinnamon oil possesses 75% of cinnamaldehyde.

4) Fennel

All the plant parts of fennel (roots, stalks and leaves, with the spice obtained from dried seeds) are eatable. Fennel has it origin in the Mediterranean. I t is an ancient and common plant known to the ancient Greeks and spread throughout Europe by Imperial Rome.

Synonyms: Large fennel, Sweet fennel, Fennel fruit, Saunf (Hindi), Fructus, and Foeniculi.

Biological Source: Fennel is the dried, ripe fruits of the plant Foeniculum vulgare Mill.

Family: Umbelliferae.

Geographical Source:

Fennel is native to Mediterranean countries and Asia. It is mainly grown in France, Saxony, Japan, Galicia, Russia, and Persia. In India, it is cultivated throughout the country and often grows wild.

Macroscopic Features:

Fennel herb is stout, about 2m high, glabrous, and aromatic, having pinnately decompound leaves. The drug consists partly of whole cremocarps and partly of mericarps.

Colour: Greenish-brown.

Odour: Aromatic.

Taste: Distinct, sweet, and aromatic.

Size: 0.5-1.0cm long and 2-4mm broad.

Shape: Slightly curved and oval.

Surface: Glabrous with 5 straight prominent straw -coloured primary ridges and bifid stylopod at the apex.

Microscopic Features:

The special histological features of fennel are that the epidermis of pericarp possesses anomocytic stomata, and the mesocarp contains lignified and reticulate parenchyma. Another special feature is that it has parquetry arrangement of cells on the inner epidermis of pericarp (common in all umbelliferous fruits).

Vittae (secretory canals) are brown in colour and contain volatile oil. Endosperm is composed of polyhedral thick -walled cells contain ing fixed oil , aleurone grains, and small rosette crystals of calcium oxalate. Starch grains and trichomes are absent.

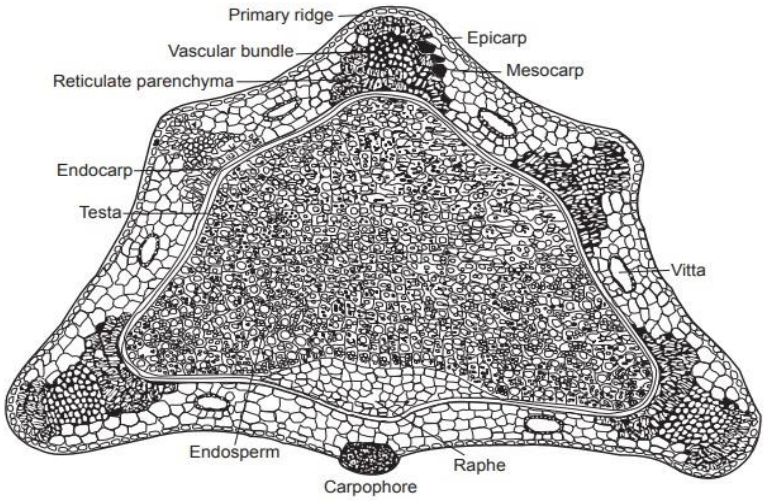


Figure: T.S. of Mericarp of Fennel

Chemical Constituents:
Fennel contains 2 -6.5% volatile oil and 12% fixed oil. The volatile oil contains 50-60% phenolic ether and 18 -20% fenchone as its major constituents, which impart a distinct odour and taste to the fruits. Methyl chavicol, anisic aldehyde, anisic acid , alpha pinene, dipentene, limonene, and phellandrene are the other volatile oil constituents.

Chemical Test:
Spot Test: Place a drop of fennel extract on filter paper and expose it to steam. A translucent spot indicates the presence of volatile oils.
Sudan III Test: Add a few drops of Sudan III reagent to the fennel extract. A red coloration indicates the presence of essential oils.

Uses:
It is used as a stimulant, aromatic, stomachic, carminative, emmenagogue, and expectorant.
It is a common ingredient of cough and stomach mixtures.
It is used in diseases related to chest, spleen, and kidney.
Anethole is added in mouth and dental preparations.

Adulterants:
Exhausted fennel: is generally used to adulterate fennel. The alcohol exhausted fennel appears as fresh fennel and has 1-2% volatile oil. The steam-exhausted fennel appears dark, contain small amount of volatile oil, and are heavier than water.

Coriander
Coriander herb is grown once in a year. It is also well -known by the names of cilantro or Chinese parsley. All its parts are edible but fresh leaves and dried seeds are mostly used for cooking purpose.
Synonyms: Coriander fruits, Chinese parsley, and Indian parsley.
Biological Source: Coriander is the fully dried ripe fruits of the plant Coriandrum sativum.
Family: Umbelliferae.

Geographical Source:
Coriander is cultivated throughout the European countries, mainly in Russia, Hungary, and Holland. It is also cultivated in India, Egypt, and Morocco. In India, it is chiefly grown in the states of Andhra Pradesh (Guntur and Anantapur), Maharashtra (Jalgaon and Satara), West Bengal (Howrah and 24-Paragana districts), Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, and Jammu and Kashmir.

Macroscopic Features:
Colour: Yellowish-brown to brown.
Odour: Aromatic.
Taste: Spicy and characteristic.
Size: Fruits are 2 -4mm in diameter and 4 - 30mm in length.
Shape: Sub-globular cremocarpous fruit.
Extra Features: 10 wavy and inconspicuous primary ridges and 8 straight secondary ridges are present on the outer surface (figure 5.12). It is further described as an endospermic and a coelospermic fruit.

Microscopic Features:
The epidermis part of the pericarp is formed of polygonal tubular c ells with stomata. Inner epidermis of pericarp consists ofparquetry cells. Calcium oxalate prisms are found in epidermal cells. In mesocarp, inner and outer layer of parenchyma is present along with a layer ofsclerenchyma between them. Presence of seed

i s one of the main characteristic s of umbelliferous fruits. It lacks starch grains, trichomes, and lignified reticulate parenchyma. In endosperm, fixed oil globules are found and volatile oil is present in the vittae. The polygonal thick-walled cellulose parenchyma of endosperm contains aleurone grains.

Chemical Constituents:
Coriander is chemically constituted with:
Volatile oil (0.3-1%),
Fixed oil (13%), and
Proteins (20%).

The volatile oil contains:
90% of D-linalool (coriandrol),
Coriandryl acetate, and
L-borneol, geraniol, and pinene (in trace amounts)
The coriander leaves contain rich content of vitamin A. Coriander fruits yield 5 - 7% of ash. The composition of volatile oil varies extensively during the storage of crude drug.

Chemical Test:
Prick Test: 2-5mg of powdered coriander is applied on the skin with a drop of saline solution, and then pricked into the skin. The reactions occurring are observed after 15 minutes. Reactions with a diameter of at least 3mm larg er than the negative control (saline solution) are regarded as positive.

Uses:
The fruits and volatile oil are aromatic, carminative, stimulant and flavouring agents.
The oil is used along with purgatives to prevent gripping.
It is an ingredient in orange spirit and cascara elixir.

Substitute:
Coriander is substituted by ellipsoidal Bombay coriander fruits having a less content of volatile oil.

Chapter:7
Tannins

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of Tannins
Catechu, Pterocarpus

Tannins:
Tannins are a diverse group of polyphenolic compounds found abundantly in plants. These secondary metabolites are known for their ability to bind and precipitate proteins, alkaloids, and other organic compounds. Tannins play a significant ecological role in plants by providing defense against herbivores and pathogens and contribute to the astringency of many fruits, teas, and wines.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Structure:
Composed of polyphenolic compounds with varying molecular weights (500–3000 Da).
Contain hydroxyl groups (-OH) and carboxyl groups (-COOH), which facilitate hydrogen bonding and metal ion chelation.

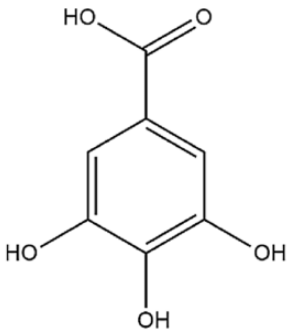


Figure: Structure of Tannin

Chemical Properties:
Water-soluble due to their phenolic hydroxyl groups.
Exhibit astringency by binding to proteins and precipitating them.
Form complexes with alkaloids, gelatin, and heavy metals.

Biosynthesis:
Derived from the shikimate pathway and phenylpropanoid metabolism.

Chemical Classes of Tannins:
1) Hydrolyzable Tannins:
Composed of a central sugar molecule (usually glucose) esterified with gallic acid or ellagic acid.
Easily hydrolyzed by acids or enzymes.
Example: Tannic acid, ellagitannins.

2) Condensed Tannins (Proanthocyanidins):
Formed by the polymerization of flavan-3-ols (catechin, epicatechin).
Resistant to hydrolysis.
Example: Catechins, procyanidins.

3) Complex Tannins:
Contain features of both hydrolyzable and condensed tannins.

Biological Sources:
Plant Families Rich in Tannins:
Fabaceae: Acacia species.
Fagaceae: Oak bark (Quercus species).
Anacardiaceae: Mango (Mangifera indica).
Theaceae: Tea (Camellia sinensis).

Plant Parts Containing Tannins:
Bark (e.g., oak, acacia).
Leaves (e.g., tea, eucalyptus).
Fruits (e.g., pomegranate, berries).
Roots and seeds.

Methods of Extraction:
Preparation:
Plant material is dried, powdered, and subjected to extraction.

Extraction Methods:
Aqueous Extraction: Tannins are extracted with hot or cold water.
Alcoholic Extraction: Ethanol or methanol enhances the solubility of tannins.
Soxhlet Extraction: Continuous extraction with solvents for high yield.
Purification:
Crystallization or chromatographic techniques like HPLC and TLC.

Therapeutic Uses:
Antioxidant Activity: Tannins scavenge free radicals and protect against oxidative stress.
Antimicrobial Effects: Effective against bacteria, viruses, and fungi. Example: Gallic acid shows potent antibacterial activity.
Astringent Properties: Used in wound healing and to reduce inflammation.
Anti-inflammatory: Inhibit enzymes like cyclooxygenase (COX), reducing inflammation.
Anticancer Potential: Proanthocyanidins and ellagitannins induce apoptosis in cancer cells.
Antidiarrheal: Bind to intestinal mucosa, forming a protective layer.
Cardiovascular Protection: Proanthocyanidins improve vascular health and reduce cholesterol.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceutical Industry: Tannins are used in formulations for wound healing, diarrhea, and inflammation.
Food Industry: Additives in wine, beer, and beverages for flavor and stability.
Cosmetic Industry: Used in astringent creams, anti-aging products, and sunscreens.
Leather Tanning: Tannins from oak and chestnut are used for converting raw hides into leather.
Dye Industry: Tannins are natural mordants in fabric dyeing.

Pale Catechu
Pale catechu is an extract occurring as dark or pale-brown coloured cubes having a dull, powdery fracture. It may also occur in the form of lozenges.
Synonyms: Gambier, Pale Catechu, Terra Japonica, and Catechu.

Biological Source: Pale catechu is an extract prepared from the leaves and young shoots of plant Uncaria gambier Roxburg.
Family: Rubiaceae.

Geographical Source:
This plant is a climbing shrub indigenous to the Malaya Archipelago and largely cultivated on the small islands between Singapore and Sumatra as well as in British North Borneo and on other islands of the Archipelago. The drug was introduced into Europe towards the end of the 18th century, but was probably used in India during the primitive era for chewing with betel leaf (the leaf of Piper betel Linn).

Macroscopic Features:
Form: Gambier occurs in the form of regular cubes (measuring 2 -3cm on each side), in masses of a dherent cubes and sometimes in larger r ectangular blocks (4cm long), or in irregular broken pieces.
Colour: Dark reddish-brown colour.
Odour: Odourless.
Taste: First bitter and astringent, but afterwards sweetish.
Surface: Dull.
Fracture: Brittle.

Microscopic Features:
A little of the powdered drug mounted in lacto phenol and examined under the microscope exhibits numerous minute acicular crystals of catechin. The residue left after extraction with alcohol may be examined for starch, which should be absent.
The residue insoluble in water consists mainly of pieces of epidermis, trichomes, cork cells , pollen grains (11-18 diameter with three pores), and other vegetables debris of the young leafy twigs used in its preparations.

Chemical Constituents:
Pale catechu contains about 7.33% (+) catechin and 22 -50% catechu tannic acid. These two substances in varying proportions constitute together over 60% of the drug.
Catechu tannic acid gives a green colour with ferric chloride solution, indicating a phlobatannin. Brown substance, rubeanic and japonic acids, of unknown chemical nature are also present. Other constituents of the drug are catechu-red, quercetin, and gambier fluorescein (a fluorescent substance).

Uses:
Medicinal Uses:
All parts of the plant have astringent properties.
In India, gambier is used as skin lotions since remote times.
The Malays (ancient Malaysia) also use gambier as a lotion and apply it to treat burns.
In paste form, it is used to treat scurf.
It has commonly been used by the Indians and Malays to treat diarrhoea and dysentery, and as a gargle for sore throat.
In Borneo, it has been used in the treatment of sciatica and lumbago.

Other Uses:
Gambier catechu yields a colour known as Cutch Brown, which is used for dyeing and tanning cotton, wool and silk.
It is also used on leather, such as calf and kip skins. The common khaki colour is obtained from it.

Adulterants:
The adulteration of gambier has been done with mineral matter (clay, ferric hydroxide, etc.), starch and astringent extracts. Few Dutch East Indies gambier come in last blocks, have about 25% of moisture, and leaves around 30-45% of water-insoluble remains, calculated on the substance dried at 100°C.

Black Catechu
Black catechu occurs in black, shining pieces or cakes, and is sold under the name of Catechu. It grows in deciduous trees reaching upto a height of 9 -12m. This plant has short hooked spines and bi-pinnately compound green leaves with 50 pairs of feather-like leaflets.
Synonyms: Catechu, Catechu Nigrum, Cutch Khadir (Sanskrit), Katha (Hindi), Katha (Gujarati), Cashoo, Peru catechu, and Cachou.
Biological Source: Black catechu is dried aqueous extract obtained from the heartwood of plant Acacia catechu.
Family: Leguminosae.

Geographical Source:
The tree is a native of India and also found in Myanmar.
Macroscopic Features:
Form: Irregular mass, outer surface is rough and dull and rarely glossy.
Colour: Black.
Odour: Odourless.
Taste: Bitter in the beginning and astringent afterwards.
Fracture: Hard and brittle, and the broken surface is dark brown with a dull gloss and porous.
Surface: Rough, dull or slightly glossy and porous.
Solubility: Partially soluble in cold water and alcohol; completely soluble in hot water.

Microscopic Features:
A transverse section of acacia catechu shows numerous uniseriate and bi -seriate medullary rays with vessels occurring isolated or in small groups of two or four. Xylem fibres with narrow lumen occupy major portion of wood and xylem parenchyma is usually predominantly paratracheal, forming a sheath around the vessels. Wood consists of crystal fibres having prismatic crystals of calcium oxalate. A few tracheids with scalariform thickening and some cells including vessels are also present.

Chemical Constituents:
Black catechu contains tannic acid (7.5-35%), catechin (10-15%), acacatechin (2-12%), phlobatannin (25-35%), gum (20-30%), and quercitrin. Minor constituents of black catechu are quercitin, catechu red, and moisture.
Acacatechin contains (–) epicatechin which is the trans-form of acacatechin. During the extraction of heartwood chips with boiled water, epicatechin undergoes epimerisation and racemisation to dl,-acacatechin.

Chemical Tests:
Gambier Fluorescent Test: Drug is boiled with 2ml of ethyl al cohol, added with 2ml of NaOH solution followed by 2ml of petroleum ether, contents are shaken and allowed to settle. Petroleum layer does not show greenish colour. Black catechu is present.
Matchstick Test: Woody side of matchstick is dipped in solution of tannin, air dried, dipped in conc. HCl and warmed over the flame of burner Magenta/purple coloured is obtained. Black catechu may be present.
Vanillin Hydrochloride Test: The powdered drug is added with a few drops of vanillin hydrochloride reagent.Pink or red colour is observed. Due to the formation of phloroglucinol, thus indicating presence of tannins.

Lime Water Test: Few drops of fresh aqueous extract of the drug are added to 10ml lime water.A brown colour is produced and on standing for 3 minutes a precipitate is formed. Black catechu is present.
Ferric Ammonium Sulphate Test: To an aqueous solution of drug (2%), solution of ferric ammonium sulphate is added; after formation of green colour sodium hydroxide is added. Green colour changes to purple colour. Black catechu is present.
Chlorophyll Test: The powdered drug is heated with chloroform in a water bath for 1-2 minutes. The organic layer is filtered in a China dish and evaporated to dryness in a water bath.No greenish residue is seen in China dish. Black catechu is present.

Uses:
1) It possesses cooling and digestive properties, hence used in GIT disturbance.
2) It is used in relaxed conditions of throat, mouth, and gums.
3) It is also used in cough and diarrhoea.
4) It is used as an astringent (property to precipitate the body protein).
5) It is applied to ulcers, boils and skin eruptions.
6) It is an ingredient of betel leaf (Paan) and paan masala, so it is largely used in kattha industry.

Pterocarpus
Pterocarpus is a genus of pantropical trees. It is having around 35 species, of which P. marsupium is one of the most famous members of this genus.
Synonyms: Bijasal, Indian kino tree, and Malabar kino.
Biological Source: Pterocarpus is the dried juice of Pterocarpus marsupium Linn. The juice is obtained from the stem and bark by making vertical incisions on them. The exuding juice is collected and dried.
Family: Leguminosae.

Geographical Source:
Pterocarpus is widely distributed in the hilly regions of Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, and Orissa. It is also cultivated in the forests of Karnal, Kerala, West Bengal, and Assam.

Macroscopic Features:
Colour: Ruby-red.
Odour: Odourless.
Taste: Astringent.
Size: 3-10mm granules.
Shape: Angular grains.
Solubility: Partially soluble in water (about 80 -90%); completely soluble in alcohol (90%).
Extra Features: Kino pieces are angular, glistening, transparent, break with a vitreous fracture, sparingly soluble in water (about 80 -90%), and fully soluble in alcohol (90%).

Microscopic Features:
Transverse section shows alternating bands of larger and smaller polygonal cells comprising of tracheids, fiber tracheids, xylem parenchyma, and transversely arranged xylem rays. Xylem vessels are distributed all over. Tyloses filled with tannins are present. Tracheids are long,thick walled, have tapering ends and simple pits. Xylem parenchyma comprises of rectangular cells with simple pits and xylem rays are uni-to-biseriate. Calcium oxalate crystals are present and starch is absent.

Chemical Constituents:
Kino is having around 70 -80% of kino tannic acid, kino-red, k-pyrocatechin (catechol), resin, and gallic acid. Kino tannic acid is glucosidal tannin, and kino- red is a kinoin anhydride. Kinoin is an insoluble

phlobaphene, which is produced when acted upon by the oxidase enzyme. Its colour is darker than kinotannic acid.

Chemical Tests:
On treating the solution of pterocarpus with ferrous sulphate, a green colouration develops.
On treating the solution of pterocarpus with alkali (say potassium hydroxide), a violet colouration develops.
On treating the solution of pterocarpus with mineral acid, a precipitate develops.

Uses:
It acts as a powerful astringent.
It is used for treating diarrhoea, dysentery, and passive haemorrhage toothache.
The aqueous infusion of the wood is used in diabetes. The alcoholic as well as the aqueous extract of the drug shows hypoglycaemic action.

Adulteration:
Its adulteration is also done with undeveloped or mould-attack fruits.
It is also adulterated with bitter fennel, synthetic trans-anethole, fenchone, methyl chavicol, and limonene.

Chapter:8
Resins

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of Resins.
Benzoin, Guggul, Ginger, Asafoetida, Myrrh, Colophony

Resins
Resins are complex mixtures of hydrophobic, amorphous, and semi-solid or solid organic compounds produced by plants, particularly conifers and some angiosperms. They play a protective role in plants by sealing wounds and deterring herbivores and pathogens. Resins are widely used in traditional medicine, industry, and cosmetics due to their versatile properties.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Structure:
Composed of terpenoids (mono-, sesqui-, di-, and triterpenes) and phenolic compounds.
May contain volatile oils, gums, and other organic substances.

Properties:
Insoluble in water but soluble in organic solvents like alcohol, ether, and chloroform.
Hard and brittle at room temperature.
Exhibit characteristic aromatic odors.

Classification:
1) Hard Resins: Brittle, high melting point (e.g., dammar resin).
2) Soft Resins: Sticky and pliable (e.g., mastic resin).
3) Oleo-resins: Mixture of resins and volatile oils (e.g., turpentine).
4) Gum Resins: Combination of resin and gum (e.g., myrrh).
5) Balsams: Resins containing benzoic acid or cinnamic acid (e.g., benzoin).

Biological Sources:
Plant Families Producing Resins:
Pinaceae: Pine trees produce turpentine and rosin.
Burseraceae: Frankincense and myrrh.
Dipterocarpaceae: Dammar resin.
Fabaceae: Copaiba resin.

Resin-Producing Plants:
Pine Trees (Pinus species): Turpentine, rosin.
Boswellia serrata: Frankincense.
Commiphora myrrha: Myrrh.
Shorea robusta: Sal resin.

Methods of Extraction:
Natural Exudation: Resins exude naturally from plant wounds or cuts.
Tapping: Artificial incisions are made in the plant bark to collect resin.
Solvent Extraction: Organic solvents like alcohol or acetone are used to extract resins.

Distillation: Steam or vacuum distillation separates volatile components (oleo-resins).

Therapeutic Uses

Antimicrobial Activity: Resins exhibit antibacterial, antifungal, and antiviral properties.
Anti-inflammatory Effects: Used in the treatment of arthritis, joint pain, and wounds (e.g., Boswellia resin).
Expectorant and Respiratory Relief: Resins like myrrh and frankincense are used in the treatment of cough and bronchitis.
Antioxidant Properties: Protect against oxidative stress by scavenging free radicals.
Wound Healing: Promote tissue repair and prevent infections.
Anti-cancer Potential: Some resins, like Boswellia, show activity against tumor cells.

Commercial Applications

Pharmaceuticals: Used in formulations for ointments, plasters, and liniments.
Cosmetics: Resins are incorporated into creams, perfumes, and aromatic products for their fragrance and therapeutic properties.
Varnishes and Adhesives: Hard resins like rosin are used in varnish production and adhesives.
Incense and Perfumes: Frankincense and myrrh are key components of incense and perfumes.
Paints and Printing Inks: Resins act as binders in paints and inks.

Benzoin:

Biological Source

Benzoin is a balsamic resin obtained from the incisions made in the bark of Styrax benzoin and Styrax paralleloneurus, belonging to the family Styracaceae.

Geographical Distribution

Native to Southeast Asia, particularly Sumatra, Java, and Thailand.
Cultivated in tropical regions for its aromatic resin.

Morphological Characteristics

Macroscopic Characters

Appearance: Hard, brittle, irregular, or agglomerated masses.
Color ranges from yellowish-brown to reddish-brown with a dull or glossy surface.
Odor: Strongly aromatic and balsamic.
Taste: Slightly acrid and aromatic.

Microscopic Characters:

Acicular crystals of benzoic acid.
Resin cells and oil globules in a parenchymatous matrix.
Presence of schizogenous resin ducts.

Chemical Constituents:

Resin Components:
Benzoic Acid (principal compound).
Cinnamic Acid and its esters.
Phenolic acids and resins.

Volatile Compounds:
Vanillin (trace amounts).
Benzyl benzoate and benzyl cinnamate.

Methods of Collection:
Tapping: Incisions are made in the bark of the tree to collect the exudate.
Natural Collection: Resin is collected from natural cracks or wounds on the tree bark.

Chemical Tests:
Solubility Test:
Soluble in alcohol, ether, and chloroform; insoluble in water.

Melting Point:
Ranges from 85°C to 100°C.

Fluorescence Test:
When dissolved in alcohol and observed under UV light, it exhibits fluorescence.

Therapeutic Uses:
Expectorant: Used in cough syrups and lozenges.
Antiseptic: Applied in wound healing and oral care formulations.
Carminative: Provides relief from flatulence and indigestion.
Aromatic Applications: Widely used in incense and perfumes due to its pleasant aroma.
Anti-inflammatory: Soothes inflamed skin and mucosa.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Ingredient in inhalants, lozenges, and liniments.
Cosmetics and Perfumes: Used as a fragrance enhancer.
Industrial Use: Component in varnishes and adhesives.
Incense: Incorporated in religious and aromatic incense sticks.

Adulterants:
Benzoin is often adulterated with colophony or synthetic resins.

Guggul
Biological Source:
Guggul is an oleo-gum resin obtained from the bark of Commiphora mukul (Syn. Commiphora wightii), belonging to the family Burseraceae.

Geographical Distribution:
Native to India, Pakistan, and Bangladesh.
Found in arid and semi-arid regions, particularly in Rajasthan, Gujarat, and Maharashtra.

Macroscopic Characters:
Appearance: Yellowish-brown to reddish-brown or dull gray lumps or irregular masses.
Surface may be sticky and translucent.
Odor: Aromatic and balsamic.
Taste: Bitter and acrid.

Microscopic Characters:
Resin cells interspersed with oil globules.
Schizogenous ducts containing oleo-gum resin.

Shows irregular parenchymatous tissues.

Chemical Constituents:

1) Steroidal Compounds:
- Z-Guggulsterone.
- E-Guggulsterone.

2) Resin:
- Myrrhanone and myrrhanol.

3) Volatile Oils:
- Sesquiterpenes and diterpenes.

4) Other Components:
- Gum, lignans, flavonoids, and carbohydrates.

Methods of Collection:

Tapping: Shallow incisions are made on the bark, and the exudate is collected after it hardens.
Natural Collection: Oleo-gum resin is collected from cracks and natural wounds on the tree bark.

Chemical Tests:

Solubility Test: Soluble in alcohol and partially soluble in water.
Melting Point: Softens at 25°C and melts at 65°C.
Ash Value: Not more than 7%.
Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC): Used for detecting guggulsterones with standard markers.

Therapeutic Uses:

Hypolipidemic: Reduces cholesterol and triglycerides.
Anti-inflammatory: Effective in arthritis and other inflammatory conditions.
Antioxidant: Protects against oxidative stress and free radicals.
Thyroid Stimulation: Improves metabolic activity and weight management.
Skin Disorders: Used in formulations for acne and other dermatological conditions.
Traditional Uses: Applied in Ayurveda for treating obesity, cardiovascular diseases, and respiratory issues.

Ginger

Biological Source:

Ginger is the dried rhizome of Zingiber officinale Roscoe, belonging to the family Zingiberaceae.

Geographical Distribution:

Widely cultivated in tropical and subtropical regions.
Major producers include India, China, Jamaica, Nigeria, and Indonesia.

Macroscopic Characters:

Appearance: Flattened, branched rhizomes with a pale yellow to light brown surface. Longitudinal striations and wrinkles with occasional rootlets and fibers.
Shape and Size: Oblong, flattened, 5–15 cm long, and about 1–1.5 cm thick.
Odor: Strongly aromatic, characteristic of ginger.
Taste: Spicy, pungent, and slightly sweet.

Microscopic Characters:

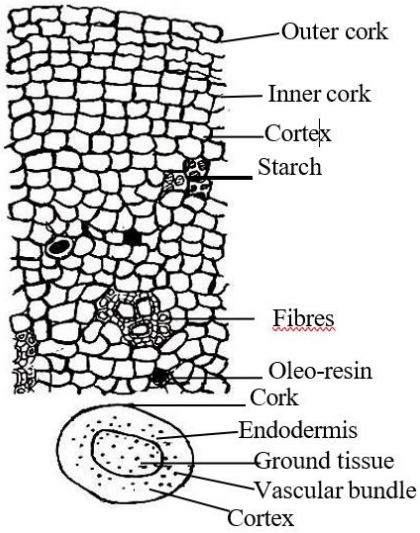


Figure: T.S of Ginger.

Parenchymatous cells filled with starch grains.
Fibrovascular bundles scattered throughout the ground tissue.
Oil cells containing volatile oil droplets.
Cork cells present on the surface.

Chemical Constituents:

Volatile Oil (~1-3%): Gingerol, shogaol, zingiberene, and bisabolene (responsible for aroma and taste).
Non-Volatile Compounds: Gingerols (primary bioactive compounds). Shogaols (dehydrated form of gingerols).
Other Components: Zingerone, diarylheptanoids, and resins.

Methods of Collection:

Harvesting: Rhizomes are harvested after 8–10 months of planting.
Drying and Processing: Washed rhizomes are sun-dried or dried in hot air ovens for preservation.

Chemical Tests:

1) Solubility Test: Volatile oil is soluble in ethanol and ether.
2) Ash Value: Total ash should not exceed 8%.
3) Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC): Used for the identification of gingerols and shogaols.
4) Starch Test: Starch grains show a blue coloration with iodine.

Therapeutic Uses:

Digestive Aid: Relieves nausea, vomiting, and indigestion.
Anti-inflammatory: Useful in arthritis and muscle pain.
Antiemetic: Effective in preventing motion sickness and morning sickness.
Antioxidant: Protects against oxidative stress.
Cardioprotective: Reduces cholesterol levels and prevents blood clotting.
Antimicrobial: Effective against certain bacteria and fungi.

Commercial Applications

Pharmaceuticals: Incorporated into anti-nausea and digestive aid formulations.
Food Industry: Used as a spice and flavoring agent in various cuisines.

Cosmetics: Found in anti-aging and skin rejuvenation products.
Traditional Medicine: Used in Ayurveda, Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM), and folk medicine.

Adulterants:
Commonly adulterated with rhizomes of other Zingiber species or with starch.

Asafoetida
Biological Source:
Asafoetida is the oleo-gum resin obtained by incision or natural exudation from the roots of Ferula asafoetida L. or related species of Ferula, belonging to the family Apiaceae.

Geographical Distribution:
Native to Iran, Afghanistan, and Central Asia.
India primarily imports asafoetida for culinary and medicinal purposes.
Cultivation is attempted in arid regions like Rajasthan and Himachal Pradesh.

Macroscopic Characters:
Appearance: Irregular masses, tears, or lumps with a pale yellow to reddish-brown surface. Semi-solid when fresh but becomes brittle upon storage.
Odor: Strong, pungent, sulfurous, characteristic of asafoetida.
Taste: Acrid, bitter, and alliaceous (garlic-like).

Microscopic Characters:
Shows schizogenous ducts containing oleo-gum resin.
Presence of calcium oxalate crystals.
Parenchymatous tissue with scattered oil globules and resin ducts.

Chemical Constituents:
Volatile Oils (~4-20%): Sulfur-containing compounds like disulfides (responsible for the characteristic odor).
Resins (~40-60%): Ferulic acid, umbelliferone, and related sesquiterpene coumarins.
Gum (~20-25%): Composed of galactose, arabinose, rhamnose, and glucose.
Other Components: Essential oils like pinene, vanillin, and asaresinotannols.

Methods of Collection:
Tapping: Incisions are made at the base of the plant, and the exudate is collected.
Natural Exudation: Gum resin exudes naturally from wounds or cracks in the root system.

Chemical Tests:
1) Solubility Test: Soluble in alcohol and partially soluble in water.
2) Ash Value: Total ash value: Not more than 15%.
3) Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC): Used to detect sulfur-containing compounds.
4) Melting Point: Softens at 25–30°C and becomes brittle at lower temperatures.

Therapeutic Uses:
1) Digestive Aid: Relieves bloating, flatulence, and indigestion.
2) Antispasmodic: Alleviates abdominal cramps and colic pain.
3) Expectorant: Effective in clearing respiratory passages and treating bronchitis.
4) Antimicrobial: Exhibits antibacterial, antifungal, and antiviral properties.

5) Emmenagogue: Used to stimulate menstrual flow.
6) Traditional Medicine: Applied in Ayurveda and Unani systems for a wide range of conditions including nervous disorders and hysteria.

Commercial Applications:
Culinary Uses: Commonly used as a flavoring agent in Indian cuisine and vegetarian dishes.
Pharmaceuticals: Incorporated into digestive tonics, expectorants, and antispasmodic formulations.
Traditional Medicine: Used in homemade remedies for colds, coughs, and indigestion.
Adulterants:
Asafoetida is often adulterated with synthetic resins, starch, chalk powder, or gum Arabic.

Myrrh
Biological Source:
Myrrh is the oleo-gum resin obtained from the bark of Commiphora myrrha (Nees) Engl. or related species of Commiphora, belonging to the family Burseraceae.

Geographical Distribution:
Native to arid regions of northeastern Africa (Somalia, Ethiopia) and the Arabian Peninsula (Oman, Yemen). Also found in some parts of India.

Macroscopic Characters:
Appearance: Irregular-shaped masses, tears, or granules.
Yellowish-brown to reddish-brown surface with a rough and dusty texture.
Fracture: Brittle, showing an uneven and granular fracture.
Odor: Aromatic and balsamic.
Taste: Bitter and slightly pungent.

Microscopic Characters:

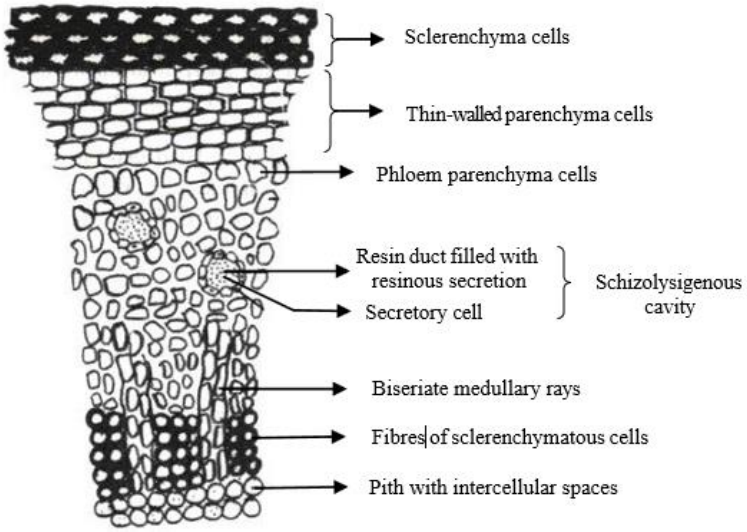


Figure: T.S. of Myrrh Bark.

Schizogenous and lysigenous resin canals containing oleo-gum resin.
Parenchyma cells with calcium oxalate crystals.
Thin-walled, polygonal cells in the gum region.

Chemical Constituents:
Resins (~25–40%): Commiphoric acids and other diterpenoids.
Volatile Oils (~2–10%): Sesquiterpenes like heerabolene and elemene, responsible for the characteristic aroma.
Gums (~30–60%): Polysaccharides, including arabinose and galactose.
Other Components: Steroids, tannins, and bitter principles.

Methods of Collection:
Tapping: Incisions are made on the bark, allowing the resin to exude naturally.
Drying: The exudate hardens upon exposure to air and is collected periodically.

Chemical Tests:
1) Solubility Test: Partially soluble in water, soluble in alcohol and ether.
2) Ash Value: Total ash: Not more than 10%.
3) TLC Analysis: Identifies volatile oil and resin components.
4) Burn Test: Burns with a characteristic aromatic odor.

Therapeutic Uses:
1) Antiseptic: Used for treating wounds, ulcers, and oral infections like gingivitis.
2) Anti-inflammatory: Effective in reducing swelling and inflammation.
3) Astringent: Beneficial for tightening tissues and reducing secretions.
4) Analgesic: Used for relieving pain in conditions like arthritis and muscle sprains.
5) Expectorant: Helps in clearing respiratory congestion.
6) Carminative: Improves digestion and alleviates flatulence.
7) Traditional Medicine: Employed in Ayurveda, Unani, and TCM for a variety of ailments including
8) menstrual disorders.

Commercial Applications:
1) Pharmaceuticals: Incorporated into oral health products, wound-healing formulations, and anti-inflammatory medicines.
2) Cosmetics: Found in skin-care products for its astringent and anti-aging properties.
3) Aromatherapy: Used in incense and essential oil blends for relaxation and spiritual purposes.
4) Perfumery: As a fixative in fragrances.

Adulterants:
Often adulterated with inferior resins or synthetic substitutes.

Colophony
Biological Source:
Colophony, also known as rosin, is the solid residue obtained after distillation of the volatile oil (turpentine) from the oleo-resin of various species of Pinus, such as Pinus roxburghii (Chir pine) or Pinus longifolia, belonging to the family Pinaceae.

Geographical Distribution:
Native to temperate regions of North America, Europe, and Asia.
Major producers include India, the United States, and China.

Macroscopic Characters:
Appearance: Brittle, glassy, transparent, or semi-transparent masses.
Pale yellow to dark brown in color, depending on the source and grade.
Fracture: Sharp and conchoidal (shell-like).
Odor: Faintly aromatic and resinous.
Taste: Slightly bitter.

Microscopic Characters:
Colophony is a processed material, so microscopic features are not applicable.
Chemical Constituents:
Resins (~90-95%): Mainly composed of abietic acid and its derivatives. Pimaric acid, isopimaric acid, and palustric acid are also present.
Volatile Oil: Trace amounts may be present, including terpenes like pinene and limonene.
Neutral Resins: Includes esterified and free resin acids.

Methods of Collection and Preparation:
Tapping: The tree trunk is incised, and oleo-resin exudes naturally.
Distillation: The volatile oil (turpentine) is removed via steam distillation, leaving colophony as the residue.
Purification: Solidified and purified by removing impurities.

Chemical Tests:
1) Solubility: Soluble in alcohol, ether, and chloroform but insoluble in water.
2) Acid Value: A high acid value (>150) indicates the presence of resin acids.
3) Melting Point: Typically between 75°C and 85°C.
4) Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC): Used to detect resin acids like abietic acid.

Therapeutic Uses:
1) Topical Applications: Acts as a mild antiseptic and adherent in plasters and ointments.
2) Expectorant: Historically used in cough formulations.
3) Antimicrobial: Exhibits mild antibacterial and antifungal activity.
4) Antiinflammatory: Used in traditional systems for pain relief.

Commercial Applications:
1) Adhesive Industry: Major component in manufacturing adhesives and sealants.
2) Varnish and Paints: Provides gloss and tack to varnishes and paints.
3) Paper Industry: Used for paper sizing.
4) Rubber Industry: Incorporated in rubber manufacturing for elasticity and tack.
5) Pharmaceuticals: Used in ointments, plasters, and dental cements.
6) Cosmetics: Found in depilatory waxes and nail varnishes.

Adulterants:
Adulterated with other resinous substances or synthetic materials.

Chapter:9
Glycosides

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of **Glycosides**.
Senna, Aloes, Bitter Almond

Glycosides
Glycosides are organic compounds consisting of a sugar molecule (glycone) bound to a non-sugar component (aglycone or genin) through a glycosidic bond. They are widely distributed in the plant kingdom and play essential roles in plant defense, growth, and metabolism. In humans, glycosides exhibit diverse pharmacological activities, making them important in medicine.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Structure:
Glycone: A sugar moiety, usually glucose, rhamnose, or galactose.
Aglycone: A non-sugar moiety that determines the biological activity.

Types of Glycosides (Based on Aglycone):
1) Cardiac Glycosides: Contain a steroidal aglycone.
2) Anthraquinone Glycosides: Derived from anthraquinone compounds.
3) Saponin Glycosides: Aglycone is a triterpenoid or steroid.
4) Cyanogenic Glycosides: Release hydrogen cyanide upon hydrolysis.
5) Flavonoid Glycosides: Flavonoid aglycone structure.
6) Coumarin Glycosides: Derived from coumarin compounds.

Chemical Properties:
Soluble in water and polar solvents due to glycone.
Hydrolyzed by acids, bases, or enzymes (glycosidases) to release aglycone.

Biological Sources:
1) Cardiac Glycosides:
- Foxglove (Digitalis purpurea, Digitalis lanata).
- Oleander (Nerium oleander).

2) Anthraquinone Glycosides:
- Aloe (Aloe vera).
- Senna (Cassia senna).

3) Saponin Glycosides:
- Soapwort (Saponaria officinalis).
- Ginseng (Panax ginseng).

4) Flavonoid Glycosides:
- Green tea (Camellia sinensis).
- Citrus fruits (Citrus limon).

5) Cyanogenic Glycosides:

- Cassava (Manihot esculenta).
- Bitter almonds (Prunus amygdalus var. amara).

Methods of Extraction:

Preparation:

Plant material is dried and powdered for extraction.

Extraction Methods:

Cold Maceration or Percolation: Used for water-soluble glycosides.

Alcoholic Extraction: Methanol or ethanol enhances the solubility of glycosides.

Hydrolysis and Purification: Enzymatic or acidic hydrolysis releases the aglycone for characterization.

Purification:

Chromatographic methods (TLC, HPLC).

Therapeutic Uses:

Cardiac Glycosides: Used in heart failure and arrhythmias. Example: Digoxin and digitoxin from Digitalis.

Anthraquinone Glycosides: Laxative action. Example: Aloin from Aloe and sennosides from Senna.

Saponin Glycosides: Expectorant, anti-inflammatory, and hypocholesterolemic effects. Example: Ginsenosides from Panax ginseng.

Cyanogenic Glycosides: Antimicrobial activity but toxic at high doses. Example: Amygdalin from bitter almonds.

Flavonoid Glycosides: Antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and cardioprotective properties. Example: Rutin and quercetin glycosides.

Coumarin Glycosides: Anticoagulant and vasodilatory effects. Example: Coumarins from Melilotus officinalis.

Commercial Applications:

Pharmaceutical Industry: Cardiac glycosides in heart medications (e.g., digoxin). Anthraquinone glycosides in laxatives (e.g., senna tablets).

Food Industry: Natural sweeteners like stevioside from Stevia rebaudiana.

Cosmetic Industry: Saponins used in skincare products for their emulsifying properties.

Agriculture: Cyanogenic glycosides in pest resistance.

Senna

Biological Source:

Senna consists of the dried leaflets or pods of Cassia angustifolia Vahl (Indian senna) or Cassia acutifolia Delile (Alexandrian senna), belonging to the family Fabaceae.

Geographical Distribution:

Indian Senna (C. angustifolia): Cultivated in India, particularly in Tamil Nadu, Rajasthan, and Gujarat.

Alexandrian Senna (C. acutifolia): Native to northeastern Africa (Sudan, Somalia) and cultivated in the Middle East and Egypt.

Macroscopic Characters:

Leaves:

Leaflets are lanceolate, 1.5–6 cm long, 0.5–2 cm wide, and apex is acute.

Surface is greenish to yellowish-green, with prominent veins.

Texture is thin and fragile.

Odor: Faint, characteristic.

Taste: Slightly bitter and mucilaginous.

Pods:
Flattened, oblong, 3–5 cm long, and 1.5 cm wide.
Dark brown with thick margins, each pod contains 5–8 seeds.

Microscopic Characters:

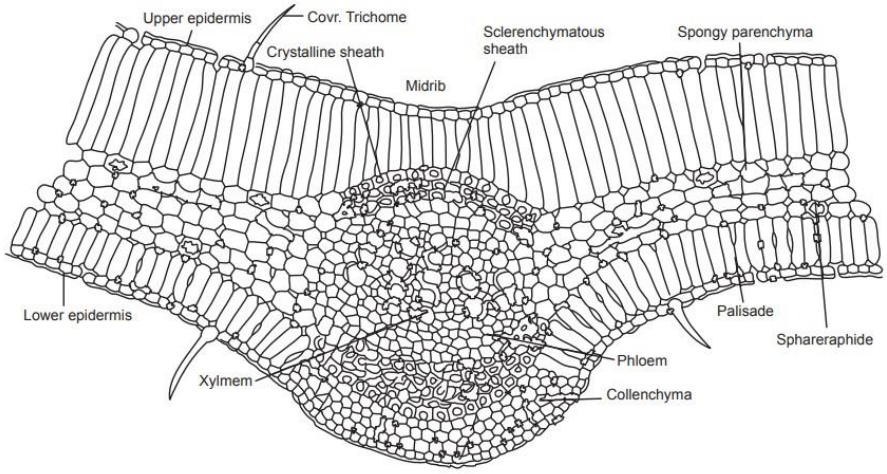


Figure: T.S. of Senna Leaf

Leaves:
Epidermis with stomata (paracytic type) and unicellular covering trichomes.
Palisade layer present beneath the upper epidermis.
Mesophyll cells contain calcium oxalate crystals.

Pods:
Pericarp with lignified sclerenchymatous cells.
Endosperm and cotyledons contain aleurone grains and oil globules.

Chemical Constituents:
Anthraquinone Glycosides (2–3%): Sennosides A, B, C, and D (active laxative principles). Rhein, aloe-emodin, and chrysophanol.
Flavonoids: Kaempferol derivatives.
Mucilage: Contributes to the bulk-forming action.
Resins: Contribute to the bitter taste.
Calcium Oxalate: Present in the mesophyll cells.

Methods of Collection:
Leaves: Collected after full growth (5–6 months) when they are green and fresh.
Pods: Collected after ripening.

Chemical Tests:
Borntrager's Test: Confirms anthraquinones. Upon treating senna extract with dilute ammonia, a pink or red color develops.
Ash Values:
Total ash: Not more than 12%.
Acid-insoluble ash: Not more than 2%.
Moisture Content: Should not exceed 8%.

Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC): Used to identify and quantify sennosides.

Therapeutic Uses:
Laxative: Used to treat constipation by stimulating peristalsis and softening stool.
Purgative: In higher doses, senna acts as a stronger bowel cleanser.
Detoxification: Used in herbal detox formulations.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Widely used in over-the-counter laxatives and detox teas.
Ayurveda and Unani: Used in traditional remedies for digestive disorders.
Veterinary Medicine: Administered as a laxative for animals.

Adulterants:
Common adulterants include leaves of other Cassia species or plants like Argemone mexicana.

Aloes
Biological Source:
Aloes is the dried latex or juice obtained from the leaves of various species of Aloe, particularly:
Aloe barbadensis (Aloe vera, Curacao aloes)
Aloe perryi (Socotrine aloes)
Aloe ferox and hybrids of A. ferox with Aloe africana and Aloe spicata (Cape aloes)
These belong to the family Asphodelaceae (or formerly Liliaceae).

Geographical Distribution:
Widely distributed in tropical and subtropical regions. Major producers include India, South Africa, the Caribbean (Curacao, Barbados), the Arabian Peninsula (Socotra), and some parts of Central and South America.

Macroscopic Characters:
Appearance: Aloes is available as irregular, angular, or semi-globular masses or in a crystalline form. Surface is glossy, smooth, and resinous.
Color: Varies from dark brown to black (Cape and Socotrine aloes) or greenish-brown (Curacao aloes).
Odor: Characteristic and unpleasant.
Taste: Bitter.

Microscopic Characters:

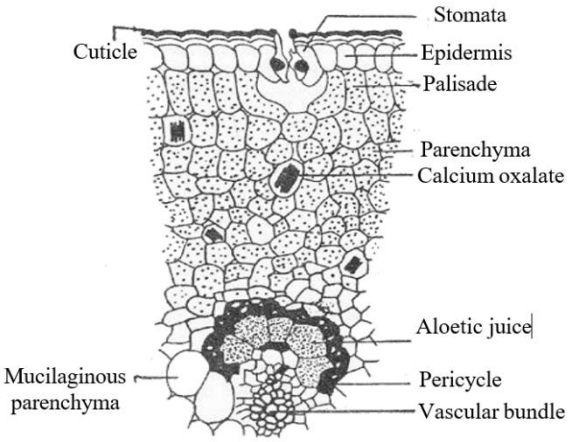


Figure: T.S. of Aloe leaf

Shows parenchymatous cells with a central region containing latex.
Vascular bundles surrounded by sheath cells.
Mucilage cells present in the pulp.

Chemical Constituents:
Anthraquinone Glycosides: Aloin A (barbaloin) and Aloin B (isobarbaloin) are the primary active components. Aloe-emodin and chrysophanol.
Resins: Contribute to its bitter taste.
Polysaccharides: Acemannan and glucomannan, found in the inner leaf gel (not latex).
Vitamins and Enzymes: Includes vitamins A, C, E, and enzymes like bradykinase.

Methods of Collection and Preparation:
Harvesting: Leaves are cut near the base of the plant.
Collection of Latex: Leaves are allowed to exude latex, which is then dried to form solid aloes.
Processing: Crude aloes are purified and sometimes heat-treated for consistency.

Chemical Tests:
Borntrager's Test: Confirms the presence of anthraquinones.
Add ammonium hydroxide to the extract; a pink or red color indicates anthraquinones.
Ash Values: Total ash should not exceed 10%.
Moisture Content: Should be less than 12%.
TLC: Detects barbaloin and related compounds.

Therapeutic Uses:
Laxative: The anthraquinone glycosides stimulate peristalsis and act as a purgative.
Skin Care: Aloe gel is used for burns, wounds, and as a moisturizer.
Anti-inflammatory: Acemannan in the gel has anti-inflammatory and wound-healing properties.
Immunostimulant: Enhances immune responses due to polysaccharides.
Antioxidant and Antimicrobial: Protects against oxidative stress and infections.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Used in laxative preparations, ointments, and wound-healing gels.
Cosmetics: Aloe vera gel is used in creams, lotions, and shampoos.
Food and Beverage Industry: Aloe gel is added to health drinks and food supplements.

Adulterants:
May be adulterated with starch, gums, or other resins.

Bitter Almond
Biological Source:
Bitter almond consists of the seeds of Prunus amygdalus var. amara, a variety of the almond tree. It belongs to the family Rosaceae.

Geographical Distribution:
Native to western Asia and North Africa.
Cultivated in countries such as Spain, Italy, Morocco, Iran, and parts of the United States (especially California).

Macroscopic Characters:
Seed: Shape: Ovoid, flattened.
Size: 2–3 cm in length and 1–1.5 cm in width.
Color: Light brown outer seed coat with darker ridges.
Texture: Hard and smooth seed coat, with an oily and whitish kernel inside.
Odor: Characteristic and slightly aromatic.
Taste: Bitter due to amygdalin content.

Microscopic Characters:
Seed Coat:
Outer epidermis with lignified palisade cells.
Presence of oil cells in the parenchyma.

Kernel:
Contains proteinaceous material and fixed oil.
Parenchymatous cells with aleurone grains.

Chemical Constituents
Cyanogenic Glycosides: Amygdalin (the primary constituent that releases hydrocyanic acid upon hydrolysis).
Fixed Oils: Oleic acid and linoleic acid (account for about 50% of the seed weight).
Proteins: Rich in albumins and globulins.
Enzymes: Emulsin, which hydrolyzes amygdalin into benzaldehyde, glucose, and hydrocyanic acid (HCN).

Chemical Tests:
Test for Cyanogenic Glycosides: Add dilute sulfuric acid to the seed extract and distill. A reddish-brown precipitate of ferric thiocyanate indicates hydrocyanic acid.
Oil Content: Confirmed by dissolving in ether and evaporating to detect the fixed oil.
Odor Test: A characteristic almond-like smell develops due to benzaldehyde.

Therapeutic Uses:
Cough Suppression: Bitter almond oil is used as an ingredient in cough syrups and lozenges.
Sedative: Amygdalin hydrolysis products have mild sedative effects.
Skin Care: Fixed oil is used for its emollient and moisturizing properties.
Antispasmodic: Traditionally used to relieve spasms.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Used in cough syrups and some sedative formulations.
Cosmetics: Bitter almond oil is used in skin creams, lotions, and hair care products.
Food and Beverages: Bitter almond extract (processed to remove HCN) is used as a flavoring agent.

Adulterants:
Bitter almond oil may be adulterated with cheaper fixed oils.

Chapter :10

Iridoids, Other terpenoids & Naphthaquinones

General introduction, composition, chemistry & chemical classes, biosources, therapeutic uses and commercial applications of Iridoids, Other terpenoids & Naphthaquinones.
Gentian, Artemisia, taxus, carotenoids

Iridoids

Iridoids are a class of monoterpenoid compounds known for their diverse biological activities. These secondary metabolites are typically found in various plants and some animals, serving ecological roles such as defense against herbivores and pathogens. They are recognized for their bitter taste and are often present as glycosides.

Composition and General Chemistry:

Basic Structure:

Iridoids are cyclopentapyran monoterpenoids derived from geraniol.
The structure includes a bicyclic framework consisting of a cyclopentane fused to a six-membered oxygen-containing ring.

Chemical Properties:

Generally exist as glycosides, with sugars like glucose attached to their aglycone.
Are water-soluble due to the glycosidic linkage.
Exhibit chemical diversity due to modifications like hydroxylation, methylation, and esterification.

Biosynthesis:

Derived from the methylerythritol phosphate (MEP) pathway, starting with geranyl pyrophosphate.

Chemical Classes of Iridoids:

Simple Iridoids:
Contain the basic iridoid skeleton.
Example: Iridodial.
Secoiridoids:
Open-ring iridoids formed by the cleavage of the cyclopentane ring.
Example: Swertiamarin, gentiopicroside.
Complex Iridoids:
Modified iridoids with additional functional groups or fused ring systems.
Example: Harpagoside.

Biological Sources:

Plant Families Rich in Iridoids:

Gentianaceae: Gentian (Gentiana lutea).
Apocynaceae: Indian snakeroot (Rauvolfia serpentina).
Lamiaceae: Skullcap (Scutellaria species).
Scrophulariaceae: Verbascum species.

Animal Sources:

Found in defensive secretions of some insects, such as leaf beetles.

Plant Parts Containing Iridoids:
Roots, leaves, fruits, and bark.

Methods of Extraction:
Preparation: Plant material is dried, powdered, and extracted.
Extraction Methods: Aqueous-Alcoholic Extraction: Methanol or ethanol is used for maximum yield.
Column Chromatography: Used for purification.
HPLC and TLC: Applied for analysis and identification.

Therapeutic Uses:
Anti-inflammatory Activity: Suppress pro-inflammatory cytokines. Example: Harpagoside from Harpagophytum procumbens.
Antimicrobial Effects: Effective against bacteria, viruses, and fungi. Example: Aucubin from Plantago major.
Hepatoprotective Properties: Protect liver cells from damage by toxins. Example: Geniposide from Gardenia jasminoides.
Antidiabetic Activity: Regulate blood glucose levels. Example: Secoiridoids like swertiamarin.
Cardioprotective Effects: Improve cardiovascular function. Example: Loganin from Cornus officinalis.
Neuroprotective Properties: Protect against neurodegenerative diseases. Example: Iridoid glycosides in traditional Chinese medicine.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceutical Industry: Used in anti-inflammatory and hepatoprotective formulations.
Cosmetic Industry: Incorporated into products for skin repair and anti-aging effects.
Dietary Supplements: Secoiridoids like oleuropein from olive leaves are marketed for cardiovascular and metabolic health.
Traditional Medicine: Widely used in Ayurveda, Chinese medicine, and European herbalism for various ailments.

Iridoids are a diverse group of bioactive compounds with significant therapeutic potential. Their structural diversity and wide range of biological activities make them valuable in pharmaceuticals, traditional medicine, and other industries. Research continues to uncover novel applications for iridoids, emphasizing their importance in modern science and health care.

Other Terpenoids
Terpenoids, also known as isoprenoids, are a vast and structurally diverse group of secondary metabolites derived from five-carbon isoprene units. They represent one of the largest classes of natural compounds, encompassing simple structures like monoterpenes to highly complex ones like sesterterpenes and tetraterpenes. Beyond monoterpenoids, sesquiterpenoids, diterpenoids, triterpenoids, and tetraterpenoids, there exist other specialized terpenoid categories that contribute significantly to plant and microbial ecology, pharmacology, and industry.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Structure:
Built from the combination of isoprene (C_5H_8) units.
Classified based on the number of isoprene units:
Hemiterpenoids: 1 isoprene unit (C5).
Sesterterpenoids: 5 isoprene units (C25).
Polyterpenoids: Many isoprene units (C>40).

Chemical Properties:
Highly lipophilic due to their hydrocarbon skeletons.
Functionalized with hydroxyl, ketone, aldehyde, or carboxyl groups.

Biosynthesis:
Derived from the mevalonate pathway or the methylerythritol phosphate (MEP) pathway in plants and microbes.
Cyclization of linear precursors like geranyl pyrophosphate (GPP) or farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP) yields complex terpenoids.

Types of Other Terpenoids:
Hemiterpenoids (C5):
Simplest terpenoids with one isoprene unit.
Example: Isoprene itself, a volatile compound released by plants.
Sesterterpenoids (C25):
Rare terpenoids with five isoprene units.
Found in marine organisms, fungi, and plants.
Example: Ophiobolin A (antifungal), sesterstatin (antitumor).
Polyterpenoids (C40 and above):
Long-chain terpenoids with multiple isoprene units.
Examples:
Rubber: Polyterpenoid from Hevea brasiliensis.
Gutta-percha: Used in dental materials and insulation.
Meroterpenoids:
Terpenoids linked to non-terpenoid moieties like phenolics.
Example: Tocopherols (Vitamin E), ubiquinones (coenzyme Q).
Nor-terpenoids:
Derived from the degradation of larger terpenoids.
Example: Abscisic acid (C15), a plant hormone involved in stress responses.

Biological Sources:
Plants:
Hemiterpenoids: Released as volatile organic compounds.
Polyterpenoids: Found in specialized tissues like latex.
Marine Organisms: Sesterterpenoids are often isolated from sponges and corals.
Microorganisms: Fungi and bacteria produce meroterpenoids and specialized terpenoid metabolites.
Industrial Crops: Rubber trees (Hevea brasiliensis) and gutta-percha plants.

Methods of Extraction
Plant Material Preparation:
Tissues are processed by drying, powdering, or macerating.
Solvent Extraction: Hexane, ethanol, or chloroform are commonly used solvents.
Steam Distillation: Used for volatile terpenoids.
Chromatographic Techniques: Purification using silica gel or HPLC.
Spectroscopic Identification: Structural elucidation through NMR, MS, and IR spectroscopy.

Therapeutic Uses:
Anti-inflammatory Activity: Sesterterpenoids and meroterpenoids exhibit anti-inflammatory properties.
Antimicrobial Activity: Effective against bacteria, fungi, and viruses. Example: Ophiobolins from fungi.

Antioxidant Activity:
Meroterpenoids like tocopherols (Vitamin E) protect against oxidative damage.
Anticancer Potential: Sesterstatins have shown tumor-suppressing properties.
Other Applications: Abscisic acid plays a role in plant stress tolerance and immune responses.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Hemiterpenoids and sesterterpenoids as drug leads. Abscisic acid as a stress-resistance enhancer for crops.
Cosmetics: Polyterpenoids like tocopherols used as antioxidants in skincare.
Industrial Applications: Natural rubber and gutta-percha are used in manufacturing and dental applications.
Agriculture: Terpenoids like abscisic acid enhance crop resilience to drought and salinity.
Terpenoids beyond the common classes are crucial in both natural ecosystems and industrial applications. Their structural diversity and wide-ranging bioactivities make them invaluable in pharmaceuticals, agriculture, and industry. As research continues, these "other terpenoids" hold promise for novel therapeutic and commercial applications.

Naphthoquinones:
Naphthoquinones are a class of naturally occurring organic compounds characterized by a naphthalene ring with two ketone groups. They are secondary metabolites widely distributed in plants, fungi, and some bacteria, where they serve roles in defense, pigmentation, and signaling. These compounds are recognized for their vibrant colors and potent biological activities.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Structure:
Composed of a naphthalene backbone with two ketone groups.
The most common derivatives include 1,4-naphthoquinone and 1,2-naphthoquinone.

Chemical Properties:
Naphthoquinones are lipophilic, allowing them to interact with biological membranes.
Exhibit redox activity due to their quinone structure, leading to reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation.
Substitution Patterns: Substituents like hydroxyl, methyl, or isoprenoid groups increase their diversity.
Biosynthesis:
Synthesized via the shikimate pathway or the acetate-malonate pathway in plants and microbes.

Chemical Classes of Naphthoquinones:
1,4-Naphthoquinones:
Most common type with ketone groups at the 1st and 4th positions.
Example: Lawsone, juglone.
1,2-Naphthoquinones:
Ketone groups at the 1st and 2nd positions.
Example: Plumbagin.
Dimeric Naphthoquinones:
Two naphthoquinone units linked together.
Example: Diaphthindole from bacteria.
Substituted Naphthoquinones:
Contain additional functional groups like alkyl chains, hydroxyl, or sugars.
Example: Vitamin K (phylloquinone).

Biological Sources:

Plants:

Found in families like Juglandaceae, Bignoniaceae, and Droseraceae.

Example: Lawsone from Lawsonia inermis (henna).

Microorganisms: Produced by bacteria and fungi as secondary metabolites.

Example: Actinorhodin from Streptomyces coelicolor.

Marine Organisms: Found in some algae and sponges.

Methods of Extraction:

Plant Material Processing: Leaves, roots, or bark are commonly used.

Solvent Extraction: Organic solvents like chloroform, methanol, or ethyl acetate are employed.

Chromatographic Techniques: Purification is performed using silica gel chromatography or HPLC.

Spectroscopic Analysis: Naphthoquinones are identified using UV-Vis, NMR, and MS techniques.

Therapeutic Uses:

Antimicrobial Activity: Effective against bacteria, fungi, and viruses. Example: Juglone exhibits antifungal properties.

Anticancer Potential: Induce apoptosis and inhibit cancer cell proliferation. Example: Plumbagin from Plumbago zeylanica.

Anti-inflammatory Effects: Reduce the production of pro-inflammatory mediators.

Antioxidant Properties: Scavenge free radicals and reduce oxidative stress.

Wound Healing: Lawsone is used in traditional medicine for its antimicrobial and healing properties.

Cardiovascular Benefits: Vitamin K (a naphthoquinone derivative) is essential for blood clotting and bone health.

Commercial Applications:

Pharmaceutical Industry: Development of antimicrobial and anticancer drugs.

Cosmetic Industry: Lawsone is used as a natural dye in henna products.

Agriculture: Used as biopesticides due to their antifungal properties.

Food Industry: Vitamin K as a nutritional supplement.

Dyes and Pigments: Juglone and other naphthoquinones are used in natural dyes.

Naphthoquinones are a remarkable class of secondary metabolites with diverse biological activities and commercial applications. Their role in traditional medicine, pharmaceuticals, and industrial products underscores their importance in science and technology. Future research is likely to expand their applications, particularly in drug development and sustainable agriculture.

Gentian

Biological Source:

Gentian consists of the dried roots and rhizomes of Gentiana lutea L. and other species of Gentiana. It belongs to the family Gentianaceae.

Geographical Distribution:

Native to central and southern Europe, especially in the mountainous regions such as the Alps, Pyrenees, and Balkan ranges.

Cultivated in parts of France, Germany, and Switzerland.

Macroscopic Characters:

Roots:

Shape: Cylindrical or tapering, often twisted.

Size: Length ranges from 10 to 30 cm, with a diameter of 1 to 2.5 cm.
Surface: Longitudinally wrinkled and rough with transverse fissures.
Color: Externally yellowish-brown; internally pale yellow.

Rhizomes:
Short, thick, and branching with remnants of leaf bases.
Fracture: Short and uneven.
Odor: Characteristic and aromatic.
Taste: Extremely bitter, attributed to secoiridoid glycosides.

Microscopic Characters:

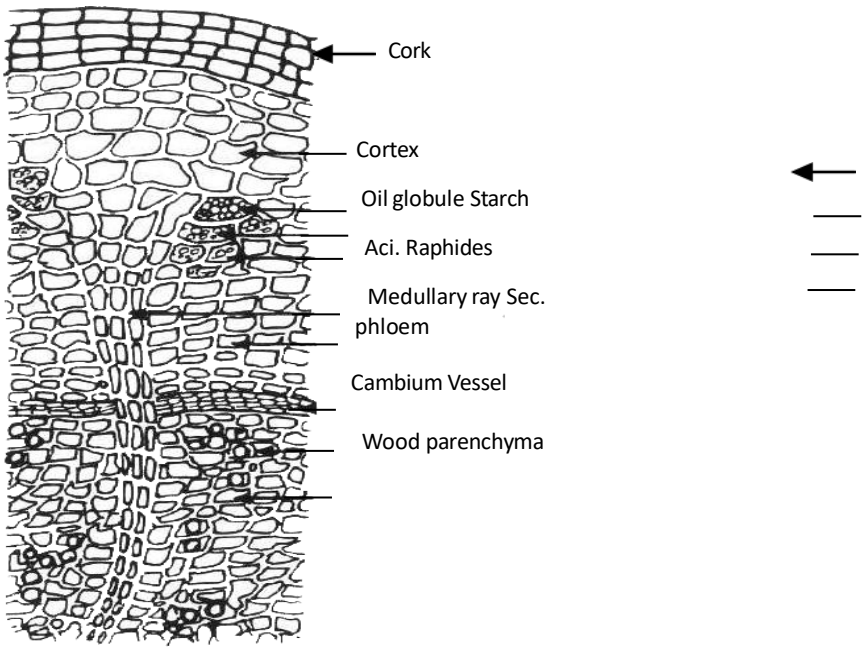


Figure: T.S. of Gentian root.

Cortex: Composed of parenchymatous cells with starch grains.
Xylem: Contains lignified tracheids and vessels.
Medullary Rays: Well-developed and prominent.
Secretory Canals: Present, containing yellowish substances.

Chemical Constituents:
Secoiridoid Glycosides:
Gentiopicrin (major bitter principle).
Amarogentin (intensely bitter compound).
Xanthones:
Gentisin and isogentisin.
Sugars:
Gentianose (a trisaccharide).
Alkaloids:
Trace amounts.

Chemical Tests:
Bitterness Value Test: Determines the bitterness index; gentian has a high bitterness value.
TLC: Gentiopicrin and amarogentin can be detected via thin-layer chromatography.
Add ferric chloride to the extract; a yellow-brown color indicates secoiridoid glycosides.

Therapeutic Uses:
Digestive Aid: Stimulates gastric secretions and appetite, used as a bitter tonic.
Liver Tonic: Promotes bile secretion and supports liver function.
Anti-inflammatory: Gentian extracts have mild anti-inflammatory properties.
Antimicrobial: Exhibits activity against certain bacteria and fungi.
Antioxidant: Protects against oxidative stress.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Used in formulations for dyspepsia, loss of appetite, and liver disorders.
Beverages: Employed as a flavoring agent in alcoholic beverages like bitters and vermouth.
Cosmetics: Extracts are used for skin tonics and cleansers.

Adulterants:
Adulterants include roots of plants like Gentiana punctata or Gentiana purpurea.

Artemisia
Biological Source:
Artemisia consists of the aerial parts (leaves and flowers) of various species of the genus Artemisia, such as Artemisia absinthium (wormwood) and Artemisia annua (sweet wormwood). It belongs to the family Asteraceae.

Geographical Distribution:
Widely distributed across Europe, Asia, North America, and Africa.
Cultivated in temperate and subtropical regions worldwide, especially in China, India, and parts of Europe.

Macroscopic Characters:
Leaves:
Shape: Pinnatifid or deeply lobed, with a feathery appearance.
Color: Grayish-green with a silvery sheen due to dense trichomes.
Texture: Soft and finely hairy.

Flowers:
Shape: Small, tubular, yellowish, arranged in clusters or panicles.
Size: 2–4 mm in diameter.
Odor: Strong, aromatic, and slightly camphoraceous.
Taste: Bitter and slightly acrid.

Microscopic Characters:
Trichomes: Multicellular, covering trichomes present on the leaf and stem.
Vascular Bundles: Collateral and well-developed.
Oil Glands: Contain volatile oils and are present in both leaves and flowers.
Epidermis: Consists of polygonal cells with a thick cuticle.

Chemical Constituents:
Volatile Oils:
Artemisinin (sesquiterpene lactone, especially in A. annua).
Camphor, cineole, and thujone (especially in A. absinthium).
Flavonoids:
Artemetin, quercetin, and luteolin.
Tannins:
Astringent polyphenols.
Bitter Principles:
Absinthin (in A. absinthium).
Coumarins:
Scopoletin and umbelliferone.

Chemical Test for Volatile Oils:
Steam distillation yields a characteristic aromatic oil.
Test for Artemisinin: TLC analysis using specific solvents and detection with UV light.
Fluorescence Test: Aqueous extracts exhibit fluorescence under UV light due to artemisinin.

Therapeutic Uses:
Antimalarial: Artemisinin and its derivatives (artesunate, artemether) are used to treat malaria.
Digestive Aid: Stimulates appetite and digestion.
Anthelmintic: Effective against intestinal worms.
Anti-inflammatory: Reduces inflammation and swelling.
Antimicrobial: Active against bacteria, fungi, and viruses.
Antioxidant: Protects cells from oxidative stress.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Artemisinin-based combination therapies (ACTs) for malaria.
Cosmetics: Extracts are used in skincare products for their antimicrobial and antioxidant properties.
Beverages: Used as a flavoring agent in alcoholic drinks like absinthe and vermouth.
Adulterants:
Adulterants include other species of Artemisia or unrelated plants with similar morphology.

Taxus
Biological Source:
Taxus refers to the genus of coniferous trees in the family Taxaceae, most notably Taxus baccata (European yew), Taxus brevifolia (Pacific yew), and other species. The medicinally important part of the plant is the bark, leaves, and sometimes the seeds, especially for Taxus brevifolia.

Geographical Distribution:
Taxus species are found in temperate regions across Europe, Asia, and North America.
The European yew (Taxus baccata) is common in Europe, parts of the Middle East, and the Caucasus region.
The Pacific yew (Taxus brevifolia) grows primarily in the Pacific Northwest of North America.

Macroscopic Characters:
Tree or Shrub Taxus is a small to medium-sized tree, growing up to 20 meters in height, with a pyramidal or irregular shape.
Leaves: Evergreen, linear, dark green, and shiny with a smooth margin. About 1–3 cm long. The leaves are arranged spirally but appear in two rows due to twisting at the base.

Bark: Thin, reddish-brown to purplish, and peeling off in strips.
Seeds: The seeds are small, hard, and surrounded by a red, fleshy aril (which is the only edible part of the plant).

Microscopic Characters:

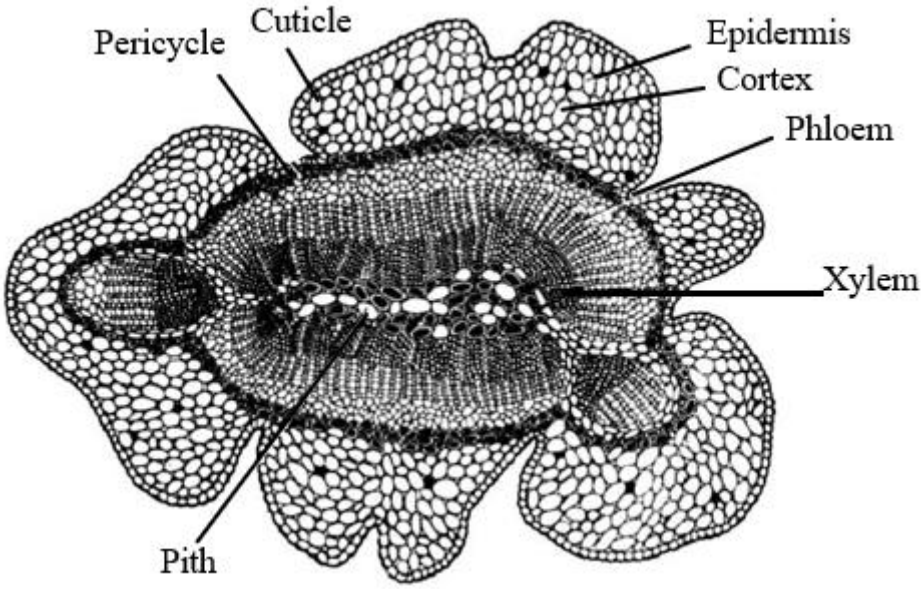


Figure: T.S. of *Taxus Baccata* Stem

Leaves: Epidermis with stomata and small resin ducts. The leaf cells contain prominent chloroplasts.
Bark: Contains concentric rings of phloem and xylem. Presence of resin ducts and tannin-filled cells.
Xylem: Lignified with tracheids and vessels.

Chemical Constituents:

Alkaloids: Taxine (a group of toxic compounds found in the leaves and bark). Taxol (paclitaxel), a diterpene alkaloid used in cancer treatment, is derived from the bark of Taxus brevifolia.
Diterpenes: Taxol is the most famous and commercially significant diterpene from yew.
Flavonoids: Flavonoids like quercetin and kaempferol have been identified in yew species.
Tannins: Present in the bark, contributing to its astringent properties.
Resins: Yew resin, derived from the leaves and bark, contains toxic compounds and essential oils.

Chemical Tests:

TLC and HPLC: To detect paclitaxel (Taxol) and taxine alkaloids.
Chemical Test for Tannins: Reaction with ferric chloride yielding a blue-black color.
Test for Resins: Extraction with organic solvents like ethanol or ether.
Fluorescence Test: Yew extracts show fluorescence under UV light, particularly from resins.

Therapeutic Uses:

Anticancer: Taxol is a powerful chemotherapeutic agent, widely used in the treatment of breast, ovarian, and lung cancers.
Antiviral and Antimicrobial: Some extracts show activity against viruses and bacteria.
Cardiovascular: Used in traditional medicine for its hypotensive properties.
Anti-inflammatory: Can reduce swelling and pain in inflammatory conditions.
Analgesic: Yew extracts have been used traditionally to relieve pain.

Astringent: Due to tannins, the bark and leaves have been used as astringents for wound healing and gastrointestinal issues.

Commercial Applications:
Pharmaceuticals: Taxol (paclitaxel) is used in the treatment of various cancers. Investigated for the development of other anticancer drugs and for therapeutic uses related to cardiovascular health.
Herbal Medicine: Yew is sometimes used in traditional remedies for pain, swelling, and wound healing.
Cosmetics: Extracts from Taxus species are being explored for their anti-aging and skin-healing properties.

Adulterants:
Adulterants may include other parts of the Taxus plant or other plants with similar morphological characteristics.

Carotenoids:
Carotenoids are a group of naturally occurring pigments found in plants, algae, and some photosynthetic bacteria. These compounds are responsible for the red, orange, and yellow colors in many fruits, vegetables, and other plant products. Carotenoids are important not only for their color but also for their role as antioxidants and precursors to vitamin A. Some carotenoids also have significant health benefits, contributing to vision, immune support, and skin health.

Composition and General Chemistry:
Basic Structure:
Carotenoids are tetraterpenoids, which are made up of 40 carbon atoms arranged in a specific structure, typically consisting of 8 isoprene units. This structure can be linear or cyclic.

Types of Carotenoids:
Carotenes: These are hydrocarbon carotenoids that lack oxygen in their structure. Examples include:
1) β-Carotene: The most common carotenoid, a precursor of vitamin A.
2) α-Carotene: Similar to β-carotene but less potent in vitamin A conversion.
3) Lycopene: Found in tomatoes, this carotenoid is known for its antioxidant properties.
4) Xanthophylls: These are oxygenated carotenoids, containing oxygen atoms in their structure. Examples include:
5) Lutein and Zeaxanthin: Important for eye health and found in dark leafy greens like spinach and kale.
6) Astaxanthin: Known for its potent antioxidant properties, found in seafood like shrimp and salmon.
7) Canthaxanthin: Found in certain algae and mushrooms.

Biosynthesis and Biological Sources:
Carotenoids are synthesized in plants and some microorganisms from simple isoprenoid precursors. They are found in a wide range of plant-based foods, and their presence contributes to the vibrant colors of these plants.

Primary Sources:
Fruits and Vegetables: β-Carotene is found in high concentrations in orange vegetables like carrots, pumpkins, and sweet potatoes. Lycopene is abundant in tomatoes, red peppers, and watermelon. Lutein and Zeaxanthin are found in green leafy vegetables, such as spinach, kale, and broccoli.
Seafood: Astaxanthin is found in seafood like salmon, shrimp, and lobster, giving them their reddish-orange color.
Algae and Fungi: Microalgae like Dunaliella salina are rich in β-carotene, and certain fungi produce carotenoids like canthaxanthin.

Therapeutic Uses:

Antioxidant Properties: Carotenoids are potent antioxidants that help neutralize free radicals, which are harmful molecules that can cause oxidative stress and damage to cells. This property makes carotenoids effective in protecting against chronic diseases such as heart disease, cancer, and aging.

Vision Health: Lutein and Zeaxanthin are especially beneficial for eye health. These carotenoids are concentrated in the macula of the eye, where they protect against oxidative damage from light and may reduce the risk of age-related macular degeneration (AMD) and cataracts.

Skin Protection: Carotenoids, especially β-Carotene and Astaxanthin, offer protection against UV-induced skin damage. They reduce the formation of wrinkles and fine lines by acting as antioxidants and helping to protect the skin from the harmful effects of sun exposure.

Immune System Support: Carotenoids play a role in supporting immune function by enhancing the production and activity of immune cells. β-Carotene, in particular, can be converted into vitamin A, which is crucial for maintaining healthy mucous membranes and a robust immune response.

Anti-inflammatory Effects: Carotenoids, especially Lycopene and Astaxanthin, have been shown to exhibit anti-inflammatory effects, helping to reduce the risk of inflammatory diseases such as arthritis and cardiovascular disease.

Commercial Applications:

Food Industry: Carotenoids are widely used as natural colorants in the food industry. They are added to a variety of products such as beverages, dairy, sauces, and processed foods to provide vibrant color and also enhance nutritional value. β-Carotene is often added to margarine, dairy products, and baby foods. Lycopene is used in juices, sauces, and supplements.

Cosmetic Industry: Due to their antioxidant and skin-protective properties, carotenoids like Astaxanthin and β-Carotene are used in skincare products. They help in reducing signs of aging, preventing sunburn, and promoting skin health. Astaxanthin, in particular, is used in high-end anti-aging and sun protection products due to its powerful ability to neutralize free radicals.

Pharmaceuticals: Carotenoids are marketed as dietary supplements for their potential health benefits. Supplements containing β-Carotene, Lutein, and Zeaxanthin are commonly used for eye health, skin protection, and boosting overall antioxidant intake. Astaxanthin is also available as a supplement for its antioxidant and anti-inflammatory effects.

Animal Feed: Carotenoids are added to the feed of livestock, poultry, and fish to improve the color of eggs, meat, and skin, as well as to enhance the nutritional quality of the products.

Carotenoids are essential bioactive compounds with a wide range of health benefits, from protecting vision and skin to supporting the immune system. Their antioxidant properties make them valuable in preventing chronic diseases, while their vibrant colors contribute to the appeal and nutritional value of many foods. As natural pigments and potent antioxidants, carotenoids are not only important for plant and animal health but also have significant commercial applications in food, cosmetics, and pharmaceuticals.

Unit III

Isolation, Identification, and Analysis of Phytoconstituents

Phytoconstituents are bioactive compounds found in plants, which include a variety of chemical substances such as alkaloids, flavonoids, glycosides, terpenoids, phenolics, and essential oils. The process of isolating, identifying, and analyzing these compounds is crucial in pharmacognosy, as it helps in understanding the therapeutic potential of medicinal plants.

1. Isolation of Phytoconstituents

The isolation of phytoconstituents involves extracting the compounds from plant material and separating them from other substances present in the plant. The general steps in the isolation process are:

Selection of Plant Material:

Choosing the correct plant part (e.g., leaves, roots, bark, fruits, seeds) based on the plant's medicinal properties.

Drying or fresh material can be used depending on the compound's stability.

Extraction:

Solvent Extraction: This is the most common method where plant material is macerated and soaked in a solvent (e.g., ethanol, methanol, chloroform, hexane) to dissolve the phytoconstituents. The solvent is then evaporated to concentrate the extract.

Infusion and Decoction: For some compounds, a simple infusion (soaking in hot water) or decoction (boiling) is used.

Cold or Hot Percolation: Involves the continuous movement of solvent through plant material to extract the phytochemicals.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE): A method using supercritical carbon dioxide, which is efficient for extracting essential oils and other volatile compounds.

Fractionation:

Column Chromatography: The extract is passed through a column containing a stationary phase (silica gel or alumina). Phytoconstituents separate based on their chemical properties like polarity.

Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC): A rapid separation technique where the extract is applied to a thin layer of silica gel or alumina, and compounds are separated based on their movement in a solvent system.

Purification:

Recrystallization: Pure compounds are obtained by dissolving the crude extract in a solvent and allowing the compound to crystallize.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC): A highly efficient method for purifying compounds based on their solubility in different solvents.

2. Identification of Phytoconstituents

Identification involves determining the chemical structure or identity of the isolated phytoconstituent. The following techniques are commonly used:

Preliminary Phytochemical Screening:

Simple qualitative tests to detect the presence of various phytochemicals, such as alkaloids, flavonoids, tannins, glycosides, saponins, and terpenoids.

Spectroscopic Techniques:
Ultraviolet (UV)-Visible Spectroscopy: Used for detecting conjugated systems in phytoconstituents. The UV spectrum can give insights into the functional groups.
Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy: Helps identify functional groups based on their absorption of IR radiation. This is particularly useful for determining the presence of alcohol, carbonyl, and aromatic groups.
Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy: 1H NMR and 13C NMR: Provides detailed information about the hydrogen and carbon atoms in a compound, allowing for the determination of its structure.
Mass Spectrometry (MS): Used to determine the molecular weight and fragmentation pattern of a compound. It helps in confirming the molecular structure.
X-Ray Crystallography: In cases of highly pure compounds, this method gives a definitive 3D structure of the molecule.

Chromatographic Techniques:
Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC): In addition to isolation, TLC is used for identifying compounds by comparing their Rf values with known standards.
Gas Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry (GC-MS): Particularly useful for volatile compounds and essential oils, where the compound is separated by GC and then identified by MS.
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC): Quantitative and qualitative analysis of compounds in complex mixtures. It's used for identifying and quantifying phytochemicals in plant extracts.

Analysis of Phytoconstituents
Once phytoconstituents are isolated and identified, their concentration and biological activity need to be analyzed. This is essential for understanding the pharmacological properties and therapeutic potential.

Quantification Methods:
Spectrophotometry: Absorbance at specific wavelengths can be used to quantify compounds like flavonoids, alkaloids, and phenolic compounds.
HPLC: Provides both qualitative and quantitative data for determining the concentration of individual compounds in an extract.
High-Performance Thin-Layer Chromatography (HPTLC): Used for both qualitative and quantitative analysis.

Biological Activity Testing:
Antioxidant Activity: Methods such as DPPH, FRAP, and ABTS assays are used to measure the free radical scavenging capacity of phytoconstituents.
Antimicrobial Activity: Phytochemicals are tested for their ability to inhibit microbial growth through diffusion methods (e.g., disk diffusion) or broth dilution techniques.
Anti-inflammatory Activity: In vitro assays (such as COX-2 inhibition) and in vivo animal models are used to evaluate anti-inflammatory effects.
Cytotoxicity and Anticancer Activity: Using assays like MTT or BrdU incorporation, researchers test the potential of phytoconstituents to inhibit the growth of cancer cells.
Enzyme Inhibition Studies: Certain phytoconstituents are analyzed for their ability to inhibit key enzymes such as α-amylase (for antidiabetic activity) or acetylcholinesterase (for neuroprotective activity).

Stability and Quality Control:
Stability Testing: Determines how stable phytoconstituents are under different storage conditions (temperature, light, humidity) and over time.
Quality Control: Standardization of plant extracts using marker compounds is important to ensure consistent quality in commercial formulations.

The isolation, identification, and analysis of phytoconstituents are crucial steps in understanding the therapeutic potential of medicinal plants. Techniques like extraction, chromatography, spectrometry, and biological testing help in isolating, purifying, identifying, and analyzing the bioactive compounds in plants. This knowledge is essential for developing new drugs, nutraceuticals, and herbal products, contributing significantly to the field of pharmacognosy and natural products chemistry.

Chapter:11

Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Terpenoids

Menthol, Citral, Artemisin

Terpenoids:

Terpenoids, also known as isoprenoids, are a large class of naturally occurring organic compounds derived from isoprene units (C5H8). These compounds are found in essential oils, resins, and saps of plants, contributing to their aromatic properties and serving various ecological functions, such as defense mechanisms against herbivores and pathogens. The general structure of terpenoids is based on the isoprene unit, which is repeated in different patterns to form diverse structures. Terpenoids are classified into monoterpenoids (C10), sesquiterpenoids (C15), diterpenoids (C20), triterpenoids (C30), and tetraterpenoids (C40), depending on the number of isoprene units they contain.

Terpenoids possess various pharmacological activities, including antimicrobial, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and anticancer properties. Monoterpenoids such as limonene (from citrus fruits) and menthol (from peppermint) are used in aromatherapy and topical applications for their soothing effects. Diterpenoids, like taxol, are potent anticancer agents, while sesquiterpenoids exhibit significant antibacterial and antifungal activities. Terpenoids can be extracted through steam distillation, solvent extraction, or cold pressing, depending on the type of compound and plant source. In addition to their medicinal uses, terpenoids are widely used in the fragrance, flavor, and cosmetic industries.

Terpenoids play an essential role in modern pharmacology and industry, with their wide range of biological activities making them valuable for therapeutic and commercial applications. Examples include the use of caryophyllene in pain relief formulations and thymol for its antimicrobial effects.

Menthol:

Menthol is a monoterpene alcohol that is widely known for its cooling sensation and is commonly found in peppermint oil. It has numerous applications in medicinal, cosmetic, and food products. Below is an overview of the process involved in isolating, identifying, and analyzing menthol from plant sources such as Mentha piperita (peppermint).

Isolation of Menthol:

The isolation of menthol typically involves the extraction of peppermint oil, which contains menthol as a major constituent, followed by purification.

Selection of Plant Material: The most common source of menthol is the Mentha piperita plant, which is cultivated specifically for its high menthol content in its leaves and flowers.

Extraction Methods: Several methods are used to extract menthol from the plant material:

Steam Distillation:

This is the most common method used to isolate essential oils, including menthol, from plant material.

Steam is passed through the plant material, causing the essential oils to evaporate. The vapor is then condensed back into liquid form, and the essential oils are separated.

Solvent Extraction:

In this method, solvents like hexane or ethanol are used to extract the essential oils from the plant material. After extraction, the solvent is removed under reduced pressure, leaving behind a concentrated essential oil.

Cold Press Extraction (for citrus oils):
This method is not commonly used for menthol, as steam distillation is more effective, but it's applicable in extracting certain terpenes from other plant species.

Purification:
The crude essential oil extracted contains a mixture of several compounds. Menthol is purified using fractional distillation where the boiling point of menthol (around 212°C) is used to separate it from other volatile components of the essential oil.
Crystallization: Menthol can be further purified through crystallization, where the oil is cooled, and menthol crystals form. These can be separated by filtration.

Identification of Menthol:
Identification involves determining the chemical structure of menthol. This is accomplished using a combination of physical, chemical, and spectroscopic methods.

Preliminary Identification:
Organoleptic Properties: Menthol has a characteristic minty odor and a cooling sensation when applied to the skin or mucous membranes, which is a key feature for preliminary identification.
Melting Point: Pure menthol has a melting point of approximately 42–44°C, which can be used to confirm its identity.

Spectroscopic Techniques:
Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Menthol exhibits characteristic absorption peaks in the IR spectrum:
O-H stretch around 3200–3550 cm^{-1} (for the hydroxyl group).
C-H stretches around 2850–2960 cm^{-1} (for the methyl and methylene groups).
C-O stretch around 1050–1150 cm^{-1} (for the ether group).

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: Menthol's 1H NMR spectrum shows signals corresponding to the methyl (-CH_3), methylene (-CH_2), and hydroxyl (-OH) protons. The typical pattern includes:
Three methyl groups at around 0.9–1.5 ppm.
A triplet around 3.4–3.6 ppm corresponding to the methine (-CH) group adjacent to the hydroxyl group.
A broad singlet around 3.3–3.5 ppm for the hydroxyl group (-OH).
The presence of the isopropyl group also shows characteristic signals.
13C NMR: The carbon spectrum of menthol shows the signals for the carbons in the ring structure, methyl groups, and the hydroxyl group.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
The mass spectrum of menthol typically shows a molecular ion peak at 156 m/z, which corresponds to the molecular weight of menthol ($C_{10}H_{18}O$).
Fragmentation patterns reveal other peaks, which can help in confirming the molecular structure.

Chromatographic Techniques:
Gas Chromatography (GC):
GC is used to analyze the purity of menthol and identify it in complex mixtures. Menthol elutes as a distinct peak in the chromatogram with a retention time characteristic of its structure.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
HPLC is another technique that can be used to separate and quantify menthol in mixtures, especially when it is part of an essential oil with several constituents.

Analysis of Menthol
The analysis of menthol focuses on quantifying its concentration and assessing its purity and potential biological activity. This involves both qualitative and quantitative techniques.

Quantification Methods:
Gas Chromatography (GC):
GC with flame ionization detection (FID) or mass spectrometry (MS) is widely used to quantify menthol in essential oils. The concentration of menthol is determined by comparing its peak area or height with that of a known standard.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
HPLC can also be employed for the quantitative analysis of menthol, particularly when it is part of a complex mixture. It uses a standard calibration curve for quantification.
Menthol, an important monoterpene alcohol, is isolated mainly from peppermint oil through steam distillation or solvent extraction. Its identification is confirmed using various techniques like IR, NMR, and mass spectrometry. Quantification can be achieved using GC or HPLC, and its biological activities, including antioxidant, antimicrobial, and anti-inflammatory effects, are assessed through various assays. The isolation and analysis of menthol are crucial for its widespread use in medicinal, cosmetic, and food products, ensuring its quality and efficacy.

Citral
Citral is a mixture of two geometric isomers, geranial (trans-citral) and neral (cis-citral), both of which are monoterpenes and commonly found in the essential oils of plants such as lemon grass (Cymbopogon citratus), lemon balm (Melissa officinalis), and orange (Citrus limon) peels. Citral is widely used for its lemon-like fragrance and has applications in the food, fragrance, and pharmaceutical industries due to its antimicrobial, anti-inflammatory, and antioxidant properties.
The isolation, identification, and analysis of citral involve several steps, including extraction, structural confirmation, and purity testing. Below is an overview of the general methods involved in each of these processes.

Isolation of Citral:
The isolation of citral typically involves extracting it from plant sources that are rich in essential oils, such as lemon grass or lemon balm. The common methods for isolating citral include:

Extraction Methods:
Steam Distillation:
Method: Steam distillation is the most commonly used method to isolate essential oils from plant material. In this method, steam is passed through the plant material, causing the essential oil, which contains citral, to evaporate. The vapor is then condensed and collected.
Advantage: Efficient for volatile compounds like citral and minimizes the thermal degradation of the compounds.

Solvent Extraction:
Method: In this method, organic solvents (e.g., ethanol, hexane) are used to extract the essential oil from the plant material. After the solvent is evaporated, the concentrated essential oil is obtained.

Advantage: Suitable for extracting a wide range of compounds but requires the removal of the solvent.

Cold Press Extraction (for citrus oils):
Method: Cold pressing is often used for citrus fruits, where the peel is mechanically pressed to release the essential oil.
Advantage: Simple and effective for citrus oils, which may contain a high concentration of citral.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):
Method: This method uses supercritical CO_2 as the extracting solvent. It is suitable for extracting essential oils while maintaining the purity of the extracted compound.
Advantage: Provides a high-quality extract with minimal degradation.

Identification of Citral:
Once citral is isolated, its identification is carried out through various spectroscopic and chromatographic methods to confirm its chemical structure and purity.

Preliminary Identification:
Organoleptic Properties: Citral has a strong lemon-like fragrance, which is one of its key characteristics for preliminary identification.
Physical Properties: Citral is a yellowish liquid with a characteristic lemon scent. It has a boiling point of approximately 226°C and a molecular formula of $C_{10}H_{16}O$.
Spectroscopic Techniques:

Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: IR spectroscopy is used to identify functional groups in citral. The key absorption bands for citral include:
C=O stretch around 1725 cm^{-1} (aldehyde group).
C-H stretch around 2800–3000 cm^{-1} (aliphatic).
C=C stretch around 1640 cm^{-1} (double bond).
Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:

1H NMR: In 1H NMR, citral shows proton signals, including the methyl groups (singlets around 0.9–1.0 ppm), methylene groups (multiplet around 2.7–3.0 ppm), and the aldehyde proton (singlet around 9.6–9.8 ppm).
13C NMR: In 13C NMR, citral shows signals for carbon atoms attached to hydrogens in the structure, with distinct peaks for the aldehyde carbon (around 192 ppm), methylene carbons (around 39–40 ppm), and others.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The mass spectrum of citral will show a molecular ion peak at 152 m/z, which corresponds to the molecular weight of citral ($C_{10}H_{16}O$). The fragmentation pattern helps confirm the structure of the compound.

Chromatographic Techniques:
Gas Chromatography (GC):
Method: GC is widely used for the separation and identification of volatile compounds such as citral. In GC, citral elutes with a specific retention time that can be used for identification.
Advantage: GC is highly efficient and provides a clear separation of citral from other compounds present in the extract.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: While GC is more commonly used for volatile compounds, HPLC can also be used for identifying citral in complex mixtures, especially when combined with UV or MS detectors for enhanced sensitivity.

Analysis of Citral:
The analysis of citral involves determining its concentration, purity, and biological activity, which are essential for confirming the quality of the isolated compound.
Purity and Quantitative Analysis:

Gas Chromatography (GC):
Method: GC is the most common method used to quantify citral. By comparing the area of the citral peak with that of a standard, its concentration can be accurately determined.
Advantage: Provides high sensitivity and precision in quantification.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC can be used to quantify citral and determine its purity. A standard calibration curve is used to determine the concentration of citral in the sample.
Advantage: HPLC is suitable for analyzing citral in the presence of other non-volatile compounds.
The isolation, identification, and analysis of citral involve a series of steps starting with the extraction of the essential oil, followed by structural confirmation using advanced spectroscopic techniques (NMR, IR, MS), and quantification using chromatographic methods (GC, HPLC). Additionally, the biological activities of citral, such as its antioxidant, antimicrobial, and anti-inflammatory effects, should be evaluated to confirm its potential for various applications in the pharmaceutical, cosmetic, and food industries. These methods ensure that citral is characterized accurately and its quality is maintained for its intended use.

Artemisinin
Artemisinin (also known as qinghaosu) is a potent antimalarial compound extracted from the plant Artemisia annua (sweet wormwood). It is widely used as the core compound in the treatment of malaria, particularly in combination therapies like artemisinin-based combination therapies (ACTs). Due to its significant medicinal value, the isolation, identification, and analysis of artemisinin are crucial for ensuring its purity, efficacy, and quality.

Isolation of Artemisinin:
The isolation of artemisinin from Artemisia annua involves extracting the compound from the plant's aerial parts, particularly the leaves and flowers, which contain the highest concentrations of artemisinin.

Extraction Methods:
Solvent Extraction:
Method: Artemisinin is typically extracted from Artemisia annua using organic solvents such as hexane, ethanol, or acetone. The dried plant material is ground and mixed with the solvent, followed by filtration and solvent evaporation to yield an extract enriched in artemisinin.
Advantage: Solvent extraction is relatively simple, effective, and commonly used in both laboratory and industrial settings.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):
Method: Supercritical CO_2 is used as a solvent to extract artemisinin from Artemisia annua. The method involves applying high pressure and temperature to CO_2, causing it to act as a solvent for extracting the essential oils and active compounds like artemisinin.

Advantage: This method is more environmentally friendly and preserves the bioactivity of the compound, making it ideal for high-purity extractions.

Steam Distillation:
Method: In some cases, steam distillation may be used to isolate essential oils from the plant, although this method is less efficient for extracting artemisinin compared to solvent extraction.
Advantage: Suitable for extracting volatile compounds but less efficient for artemisinin, which is not highly volatile.

Microwave-Assisted Extraction (MAE):
Method: MAE uses microwave radiation to heat solvents in the presence of plant material. This method accelerates the extraction process by increasing the efficiency of solvent penetration into the plant material.
Advantage: Provides faster extraction with higher yields compared to traditional methods.

Identification of Artemisinin:
Once artemisinin has been extracted, several methods are used to confirm its identity and structure.
Preliminary Identification:
Organoleptic Properties: Artemisinin is a white or pale-yellow crystalline powder with a bitter taste. Its distinct chemical odor can also provide preliminary identification.
Melting Point: Artemisinin has a melting point of 154-155°C, which can be used as a preliminary test for purity.
Solubility: It is sparingly soluble in water but soluble in organic solvents like ethanol, chloroform, and ether.
Spectroscopic Techniques:

Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: IR spectroscopy helps to identify functional groups present in artemisinin. Key features include:
A strong absorption band around 1740 cm^{-1}, which corresponds to the carbonyl group (C=O).
A broad peak around 3400 cm^{-1}, indicative of O-H or N-H stretches.
Peaks around 2900 cm^{-1}, representing C-H stretching in the alkyl groups.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: Artemisinin shows characteristic proton signals, including those for the methylene groups (around 4.5–5.5 ppm), the aromatic protons (around 6.0–7.5 ppm), and the hydroxyl group (around 4.0 ppm).
13C NMR: The 13C NMR spectrum reveals peaks for the carbons of the lactone ring, oxygenated carbons, and methylene groups, helping to confirm the presence of the key structural features of artemisinin.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The molecular ion peak for artemisinin appears at 282 m/z, which corresponds to its molecular weight ($C_{19}H_{28}O_{16}$). Fragmentation patterns further aid in confirming the structure by identifying smaller fragments.

Chromatographic Techniques:
Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC):
Method: TLC can be used to rapidly identify artemisinin by comparing the Rf value of the sample with that of a known standard. A typical TLC system might use a mixture of hexane and ethyl acetate as the mobile phase.
Advantage: Simple and inexpensive technique for quick analysis.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is often used to quantify artemisinin in extracts. A reversed-phase HPLC column and a UV detector set at 210 nm are commonly employed.
Advantage: Provides high precision and sensitivity in quantifying artemisinin and determining its purity.

Gas Chromatography (GC):
Method: GC can be used when volatile derivatives of artemisinin are created, but it is less commonly used for pure artemisinin since it is not highly volatile.

Analysis of Artemisinin:
The analysis of artemisinin focuses on determining its concentration, purity, and biological activity. Various techniques are employed for these purposes.

Purity and Quantification:
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is the standard technique used for quantitative analysis of artemisinin. A known amount of artemisinin is injected into the HPLC system, and the area under the peak corresponding to artemisinin is measured and compared with a standard calibration curve.
Advantage: It allows for accurate quantification of artemisinin in both plant extracts and purified products.

Gas Chromatography (GC):
Method: If artemisinin has been derivatized into a more volatile form, GC can be used for quantitative analysis.
Advantage: GC provides high sensitivity, but derivatization is required for non-volatile compounds like artemisinin.
The isolation, identification, and analysis of artemisinin are essential steps to ensure its purity, quality, and biological efficacy. The most common isolation methods are solvent extraction and supercritical fluid extraction, while identification relies on a combination of IR, NMR, MS, and chromatographic techniques. Quantitative analysis is most often performed using HPLC, and biological activities such as antimalarial and antioxidant assays are critical for determining its therapeutic value. Ensuring the stability and proper storage of artemisinin is crucial for its use in pharmaceutical applications, particularly for malaria treatment.

Chapter:12

Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Glycosides

Glycyrhetinic acid & Rutin

Glycosides

Glycosides are compounds consisting of a sugar molecule (glycone) bound to a non-sugar molecule (aglycone or genin) via a glycosidic bond. These secondary metabolites are widespread in plants and have a significant role in plant defense, growth, and signaling. The aglycone component can be a phenolic compound, alkaloid, or terpenoid, and the sugar component is typically a monosaccharide such as glucose or rhamnose. The glycosidic bond can be hydrolyzed by enzymes or acidic conditions to release the active aglycone.

Glycosides are classified into different types based on the nature of the aglycone. For example, cardiac glycosides (e.g., digoxin) contain steroidal aglycones and are used in treating heart diseases by improving the strength and efficiency of heart contractions. Flavonoid glycosides (e.g., rutin) are abundant in fruits and vegetables and have antioxidant properties. Saponins, which are glycosides with a steroidal or triterpenoid aglycone, are used for their surfactant properties in the pharmaceutical and cosmetic industries.

The therapeutic potential of glycosides is wide-ranging. For instance, cardiac glycosides are used to treat heart failure, while saponins have immune-boosting and cholesterol-lowering effects. Glycosides are typically extracted from plants using solvents like ethanol or methanol, and the process often includes hydrolysis to separate the sugar and aglycone for further analysis and use.

Glycyrrhetinic Acid

Glycyrrhetinic acid is a major bioactive compound derived from the roots of the plant Glycyrrhiza glabra (licorice). It is the aglycone (non-sugar) component of glycyrrhizin, the primary saponin in licorice, and is known for its anti-inflammatory, antiviral, and hepatoprotective properties. Glycyrrhetinic acid is widely studied for its therapeutic potential, especially in treating conditions such as hepatitis, gastritis, and other inflammatory diseases.

Isolation of Glycyrrhetinic Acid:

The isolation of glycyrrhetinic acid involves the extraction of Glycyrrhiza glabra root, followed by purification steps to obtain the pure compound.

Extraction Methods:

Solvent Extraction:

Method: The dried and ground root of Glycyrrhiza glabra is subjected to solvent extraction using organic solvents such as ethanol, methanol, or acetone. This extraction yields a crude mixture, which contains glycyrrhizin and glycyrrhetinic acid.

Procedure: The plant material is mixed with the solvent and allowed to soak for several hours or overnight, followed by filtration and evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure.

Acid Hydrolysis:

Method: To obtain glycyrrhetinic acid, glycyrrhizin, the glycoside form of the compound, is subjected to acid hydrolysis. This process breaks the glycosidic bond between the sugar and the aglycone (glycyrrhetinic acid).

Procedure: The crude glycyrrhizin extract is treated with dilute acid (such as hydrochloric acid) and heated. The hydrolysis reaction cleaves the sugar moiety, releasing glycyrrhetinic acid.

Chromatographic Purification:
Method: After extraction and hydrolysis, the mixture is purified by column chromatography or high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC). Silica gel is typically used as the stationary phase for column chromatography, with a solvent gradient for elution.
Advantage: Chromatographic techniques allow the separation of glycyrrhetinic acid from other components, yielding a purified form of the compound.

Identification of Glycyrrhetinic Acid:
The identity of glycyrrhetinic acid is confirmed through a combination of spectroscopic and chromatographic methods.
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Glycyrrhetinic acid is a white to pale yellow crystalline powder.
Taste: It has a slightly bitter taste, which is a characteristic feature of glycyrrhetinic acid and its derivatives.
Spectroscopic Methods:

Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: IR spectroscopy is used to identify functional groups in glycyrrhetinic acid. Key features include:
A strong band around 3400 cm^{-1}, which corresponds to the hydroxyl (-OH) group.
Absorptions in the 1700 cm^{-1} region indicative of the carbonyl (C=O) group, a typical feature of the triterpene structure.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: Glycyrrhetinic acid shows proton signals corresponding to the methylene groups and hydrogens on the triterpenoid ring structure.
Typical chemical shifts: a singlet at 0.8–1.2 ppm for methyl groups and signals in the 3.0–5.0 ppm range for protons attached to oxygenated carbon atoms.
13C NMR: The 13C NMR spectrum reveals carbons in the steroidal structure, including signals for the carbonyl group (around 175 ppm) and other carbons in the triterpene skeleton.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The mass spectrum of glycyrrhetinic acid shows a molecular ion peak at 471 m/z, which corresponds to its molecular weight ($C_{30}H_{48}O_4$).
Fragmentation Pattern: The mass spectrum provides further confirmation of the structure through characteristic fragment ions.

Chromatographic Methods:
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is used to quantify glycyrrhetinic acid and verify its purity. A reversed-phase HPLC column with a mobile phase comprising a mixture of water and methanol (or acetonitrile) is typically employed.
Advantage: HPLC offers high sensitivity and precision for both identification and quantification of glycyrrhetinic acid in complex plant extracts.

Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC):
Method: TLC can be used as a quick test for the presence of glycyrrhetinic acid by comparing the Rf value of the sample with a standard.
Advantage: Simple and cost-effective for preliminary analysis.

Analysis of Glycyrrhetinic Acid:
Analysis of glycyrrhetinic acid focuses on assessing its purity, concentration, biological activity, and stability.

Quantification Methods:
HPLC:
Method: Quantification is performed using HPLC by measuring the area under the peak corresponding to glycyrrhetinic acid. A calibration curve prepared with known concentrations of glycyrrhetinic acid is used for comparison.
Advantage: HPLC provides accurate and reproducible results for determining the concentration of glycyrrhetinic acid in plant extracts or formulations.

UV-Vis Spectroscopy:
Method: Glycyrrhetinic acid has a characteristic absorption peak around 245 nm, which can be used for quantification in a simple UV-Vis spectrophotometer.
Advantage: A cost-effective and easy method for routine analysis.
The isolation, identification, and analysis of glycyrrhetinic acid are essential for its therapeutic applications. Methods such as solvent extraction and acid hydrolysis are commonly employed for isolation, while spectroscopic techniques like IR, NMR, and MS are used for structural identification. HPLC is the preferred method for quantification, and biological activity testing confirms its pharmacological effects, including anti-inflammatory, hepatoprotective, and antiviral activities. With its wide range of therapeutic uses, glycyrrhetinic acid continues to be an important compound for pharmaceutical applications, especially for treating inflammatory conditions and liver diseases.

Rutin
Rutin (also known as rutoside or quercetin-3-O-rutinoside) is a flavonoid glycoside composed of the flavonoid quercetin and the disaccharide rutinose. It is naturally found in a variety of plants, including buckwheat, citrus fruits, apples, and some vegetables. Rutin is known for its antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and vasoprotective properties. It is widely studied for its therapeutic potential in conditions such as cardiovascular diseases, diabetes, and various inflammatory disorders.

Isolation of Rutin:
The isolation of rutin involves extracting the plant material containing the compound, followed by purification steps to obtain it in a pure form.
Extraction Methods:

Solvent Extraction:
Method: The plant material (e.g., buckwheat or citrus peels) is dried and ground, then subjected to extraction using polar solvents like methanol, ethanol, or water. The plant material is macerated with the solvent and left to soak for several hours, followed by filtration and evaporation to concentrate the extract.
Procedure: After extraction, the crude extract is further processed to obtain the flavonoid glycosides.

Soxhlet Extraction:
Method: A more efficient method involves the use of Soxhlet apparatus, where the plant material is repeatedly extracted with hot solvent. This method allows for continuous extraction of rutin and other soluble compounds.
Advantage: Soxhlet extraction provides a more thorough extraction, often leading to higher yields.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):
Method: Supercritical carbon dioxide (CO_2) is used as a solvent to extract rutin from plant material. This method is environmentally friendly and can extract high-quality rutin without the need for toxic solvents.
Advantage: SFE offers high efficiency and selectivity for extracting rutin with minimal thermal degradation.

Hydrolysis:
Method: If the rutin is in the form of a glycoside (rutinose bound to quercetin), it can be hydrolyzed using acids or enzymes to release quercetin, but rutin itself can be directly isolated from crude extracts.
Procedure: In some cases, hydrolysis may not be necessary, as rutin can be directly isolated through other methods like chromatography.
Chromatographic Purification:
Method: After the crude extract is obtained, the rutin is purified using various chromatographic techniques such as:
Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC): A quick method to screen for rutin presence based on its Rf value.
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC): Offers high resolution and quantification, allowing the separation and purification of rutin from other plant constituents.
Advantage: These techniques provide high purity and are essential for characterizing rutin in plant extracts.

Identification of Rutin:
Identification of rutin is typically performed using spectroscopic and chromatographic methods.
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Rutin is typically a yellow crystalline powder.
Taste: It has a mildly bitter taste, which is characteristic of flavonoid compounds.
Spectroscopic Methods:

Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: IR spectroscopy is used to detect functional groups present in rutin. Key absorptions include:
A broad O-H stretch at around 3200-3500 cm^{-1} (hydroxyl group).
A strong C=O stretch around 1600 cm^{-1}, indicative of the flavonoid carbonyl group.
Absorptions for the aromatic C-H stretches around 2950 cm^{-1}.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: The 1H NMR spectrum of rutin shows characteristic signals corresponding to the aromatic protons of the quercetin ring system (around 6–8 ppm), and the sugar protons (rutinose).
13C NMR: In the 13C NMR spectrum, rutin will show signals for the carbon atoms in the flavonoid skeleton (e.g., the quercetin ring system) and the sugar moiety.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The molecular ion of rutin appears at 610 m/z ($C_{27}H_{30}O_{16}$), which corresponds to the molecular weight of rutin. Fragmentation patterns provide further information about the structure of rutin and its sugar and flavonoid components.

Chromatographic Methods:
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is commonly used to separate, identify, and quantify rutin. A reversed-phase column with a mobile phase of acetonitrile and water (containing a small amount of acid) is typically used.
Advantage: HPLC allows for high sensitivity, resolution, and quantification of rutin from complex plant extracts.

Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC):
Method: TLC can be used for qualitative analysis. A typical TLC solvent system for rutin could involve a mixture of ethyl acetate, methanol, and water, and visualizing the spot under UV light.
Advantage: TLC is a rapid and cost-effective method for detecting rutin.

Analysis of Rutin:
Once isolated, rutin is often analyzed for purity, biological activity, and concentration.
Quantification Methods:

UV-Vis Spectrophotometry:
Method: Rutin exhibits characteristic absorption maxima around 257 nm and 354 nm in the UV region. A UV-Vis spectrophotometric method can be used to quantify rutin based on its absorbance.
Advantage: This method is simple and widely used in routine analysis.

HPLC:
Method: For more precise quantification, HPLC is employed. The rutin peak area is compared with a calibration curve generated from known concentrations of pure rutin.
Advantage: HPLC offers high accuracy and reproducibility.
Rutin is a valuable flavonoid glycoside with numerous health benefits, including antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and vasoprotective properties. The isolation of rutin involves extraction from plant material, followed by hydrolysis (if necessary) and purification using chromatographic methods. Identification is performed using IR, NMR, and MS, and quantification is often done by UV-Vis spectrophotometry or HPLC. The biological activities of rutin, particularly its antioxidant and anti-inflammatory effects, make it a promising compound for the prevention and treatment of various diseases, especially those related to oxidative stress and cardiovascular health.

Chapter:13

Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Alkaloids

Atropine, Quinine, Reserpine, Caffeine

Alkaloids

Alkaloids are a group of naturally occurring nitrogenous organic compounds found primarily in plants, although some are also found in animals and microorganisms. Alkaloids are characterized by their potent pharmacological effects, often influencing the nervous system. These compounds are derived from amino acids and have a wide range of structures, including indole alkaloids (e.g., serotonin), tropane alkaloids (e.g., atropine), and isoquinoline alkaloids (e.g., morphine). The name "alkaloid" comes from the basic nature of these compounds, which typically contain a nitrogen atom in their structure.

Alkaloids are known for their therapeutic and toxic properties. Many alkaloids have been used in medicine for centuries. For example, morphine, an alkaloid from the opium poppy, is a potent analgesic used for pain management. Quinine, derived from the bark of the cinchona tree, is used as an antimalarial drug. Alkaloids like caffeine and nicotine act as stimulants, while others like atropine are used to treat bradycardia or poisoning.

Alkaloids are generally extracted using solvents such as ethanol, methanol, or chloroform. The extraction process may involve acid-base extraction to isolate the alkaloid from plant material. These compounds have been studied extensively for their pharmacological effects, leading to the development of numerous pharmaceutical drugs.

Atropine

Atropine is a tropane alkaloid derived primarily from plants in the Solanaceae family, such as Atropa belladonna (deadly nightshade), Datura species, and Hyoscyamus species. It is widely recognized for its medicinal uses, particularly as a parasympatholytic agent, with effects including the inhibition of the parasympathetic nervous system, leading to increased heart rate and pupil dilation. Atropine is used in the treatment of bradycardia (slow heart rate), organophosphate poisoning, and as a pre-anesthetic medication.

Isolation of Atropine:

Extraction Methods:

Solvent Extraction:

Method: Atropine is typically extracted from plant materials such as Atropa belladonna by macerating the dried leaves or roots with a polar solvent like ethanol, methanol, or water. The plant material is soaked in the solvent, followed by filtration and concentration of the extract.

Procedure: The crude extract can be subjected to further purification steps to isolate atropine, as it is present alongside other alkaloids.

Soxhlet Extraction:

Method: Soxhlet extraction is used for continuous extraction of atropine from dried plant material. In this method, the plant material is placed in a thimble, and the solvent is heated and condensed through the apparatus to extract the alkaloid.

Advantage: This method offers an efficient and thorough extraction of atropine from the plant material.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):

Method: Supercritical CO_2 can be used to extract atropine with minimal thermal degradation and solvent residues.

Advantage: This method is environmentally friendly and can extract atropine with higher efficiency compared to traditional solvents.
Purification:
After extraction, atropine can be isolated using methods such as:

Liquid-Liquid Extraction:
This technique separates atropine from other solutes by using solvents of different polarities.
Chromatographic Techniques:
Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC): TLC can be used to detect and separate atropine from other alkaloids in crude extracts. Atropine shows a distinct Rf value, enabling its identification.
Column Chromatography: This can be employed to purify atropine from the crude extract using a silica gel or alumina column with an appropriate solvent mixture.

Identification of Atropine:
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Atropine is a white crystalline powder.
Solubility: It is soluble in water and alcohol but insoluble in ether.
Melting Point: The melting point of atropine is around 114–116°C.

Spectroscopic Methods:
Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: IR spectroscopy helps identify functional groups present in atropine. Key peaks include:
A strong N-H stretch around 3300–3400 cm^{-1} (amine group).
C=O stretch around 1720 cm^{-1} (ester group).
Aromatic C-H stretches around 2950 cm^{-1}.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: Atropine's 1H NMR spectrum shows signals corresponding to the protons of the tropane ring, aromatic protons (around 6.5–8 ppm), and the methyl and methylene protons in the ester group.
13C NMR: The 13C NMR spectrum reveals carbon signals corresponding to the tropane structure and ester functional group.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The molecular ion peak of atropine appears at 289 m/z, corresponding to its molecular weight ($C_{17}H_{23}NO_3$). Fragmentation patterns can help identify the structure of atropine and its molecular components, including the tropane skeleton and the ester group.
Chromatographic Methods:

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is used for the separation, identification, and quantification of atropine. A reversed-phase column with a mobile phase of acetonitrile and water is commonly used.
Advantage: HPLC allows precise separation of atropine from other alkaloids and is widely used for quality control in pharmaceuticals.

Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC):
Method: TLC is often used for a quick qualitative analysis of atropine. A solvent system composed of chloroform and methanol is commonly used, and atropine can be visualized under UV light.
Advantage: TLC is simple, cost-effective, and useful for rapid screening of atropine in extracts.

Analysis of Atropine:
Once isolated, atropine can be analyzed to assess its purity, potency, and quality.
Quantification Methods:

UV-Vis Spectrophotometry:
Method: Atropine can be quantified using UV-Vis spectrophotometry by measuring the absorbance at a wavelength of around 210 nm, where atropine absorbs. A calibration curve is used to calculate the concentration.
Advantage: UV-Vis spectrophotometry is a quick and straightforward method for quantification.

HPLC:
Method: Quantification of atropine by HPLC involves comparing the peak area of atropine in the sample to that of a standard, using a calibration curve for accurate concentration determination.
Advantage: HPLC offers high precision and is commonly used for the quantification of alkaloids in pharmaceutical preparations.
Atropine is a potent tropane alkaloid with significant medical applications, including its use as a parasympatholytic agent in various therapeutic settings. Its isolation from plant sources involves extraction with polar solvents, followed by chromatographic purification. Identification techniques such as IR, NMR, and MS provide structural information about atropine, while HPLC and UV-Vis spectroscopy are commonly used for quantification. Biological activity assays confirm its pharmacological effects, particularly in the treatment of bradycardia and poisoning. Given its widespread use, it is crucial to ensure the purity and quality of atropine in pharmaceutical products, achieved through robust analytical techniques like HPLC and TLC.

Quinine
Quinine is an alkaloid derived from the bark of Cinchona species (family Rubiaceae). It has been used historically as a treatment for malaria and remains a key compound in the treatment of malaria, especially for drug-resistant strains. Quinine is also used to manage nocturnal leg cramps and has an antipyretic (fever-reducing) and analgesic (pain-relieving) effect.

Isolation of Quinine:
Extraction Methods:
Solvent Extraction:
Method: Quinine is typically extracted from the bark of Cinchona species by macerating or grinding the bark and then extracting the alkaloid using a polar solvent such as ethanol, methanol, or chloroform.
Procedure: After soaking the plant material in the solvent for several hours or days, the solvent is filtered and evaporated to obtain a crude alkaloidal extract. Quinine is isolated from other alkaloids using further purification techniques.

Soxhlet Extraction:
Method: A more efficient continuous extraction process, where the ground bark is placed in a thimble, and the solvent continuously cycles over the material to extract quinine.
Advantage: Soxhlet extraction is more efficient for extracting quinine due to its prolonged extraction cycle and use of a continuous solvent flow.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):
Method: Using supercritical carbon dioxide (CO_2), quinine can be extracted under mild conditions, avoiding the use of organic solvents.
Advantage: This method is environmentally friendly and can preserve the integrity of quinine while efficiently extracting it.

Purification:
After extraction, quinine is typically purified using various chromatographic techniques:

Liquid-Liquid Extraction:
Method: The crude extract is subjected to liquid-liquid extraction with solvents of varying polarity (e.g., chloroform and water), allowing separation of quinine from other alkaloids.

Chromatography:
Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC): TLC is often used as a quick test for the presence of quinine. A specific solvent system, such as chloroform and methanol, is used, and quinine can be identified by comparing its Rf value to a standard.
Column Chromatography: This technique is employed for further purification, using silica gel or alumina as a stationary phase and a solvent system suitable for quinine separation.
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC): HPLC is a precise method for purifying quinine, where it is separated based on its interaction with the stationary phase and its chemical properties.

Identification of Quinine:
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Quinine is typically a white or colorless crystalline powder or can appear as a slightly yellow crystalline substance.
Solubility: Quinine is slightly soluble in water but more soluble in alcohol and chloroform.
Melting Point: The melting point of quinine is around 174°C to 177°C.

Spectroscopic Methods:
Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: IR spectroscopy helps identify functional groups present in quinine. Key peaks include:
A broad N-H stretch around 3400 cm^{-1} (amine group).
Aromatic C-H stretches around 2900–3000 cm^{-1}.
C=O stretch around 1700 cm^{-1} (carbonyl group).

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: Quinine's 1H NMR spectrum shows distinct signals corresponding to the protons in the quinoline ring, including the aromatic protons (around 6–8 ppm) and the methyl groups attached to nitrogen and carbon atoms.
13C NMR: The 13C NMR spectrum reveals the distinct carbon signals for the quinoline ring and the aliphatic carbons associated with the methoxy groups.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The mass spectrum of quinine shows the molecular ion peak at 324 m/z, corresponding to its molecular weight. The fragmentation pattern provides information on the structure of quinine and helps confirm its identity.

Chromatographic Methods:
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC can be used for both identification and quantification of quinine in plant extracts. The separation is performed using a reverse-phase column, typically with a mobile phase consisting of methanol and water, and the compound is detected using a UV detector.
Advantage: HPLC offers high precision for both the separation and quantification of quinine in extracts.

Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC):
Method: TLC is a simple and rapid method for identifying quinine. It can be used to compare the Rf value of the sample to that of a pure quinine standard.
Advantage: TLC is quick and cost-effective for confirming the presence of quinine in crude extracts.

Analysis of Quinine:
Quantification Methods:
UV-Vis Spectrophotometry:
Method: Quinine can be quantified using UV-Vis spectrophotometry by measuring its absorbance at around 343 nm, where quinine shows a strong absorbance. A calibration curve can be prepared with a known standard concentration.
Advantage: This method is simple and cost-effective for quantifying quinine in extracts.

HPLC:
Method: Quantification by HPLC is done by comparing the peak area of the sample to that of a known standard. A standard calibration curve is constructed for the concentration determination.
Advantage: HPLC provides high accuracy and precision in quantification.
Quinine is a significant alkaloid with important therapeutic uses, especially for the treatment of malaria. Its isolation from Cinchona bark involves efficient extraction methods such as solvent extraction and Soxhlet extraction, followed by chromatographic purification. Identification techniques like IR, NMR, and mass spectrometry confirm quinine's structure, while HPLC and UV-Vis spectrophotometry are commonly used for quantification. Biological testing, especially for antimalarial activity, is essential to assess quinine's efficacy. Due to its historical and ongoing importance in medicine, accurate isolation, identification, and analysis of quinine are vital for both research and clinical applications.

Reserpine
Reserpine is an indole alkaloid extracted from the roots of the plant Rauvolfia serpentina, commonly known as the Indian snakeroot. It is used in the treatment of hypertension and psychotic disorders, especially in traditional medicine and pharmacological applications. Reserpine works by depleting norepinephrine, serotonin, and dopamine in the brain and peripheral nervous system, leading to its tranquilizing and antihypertensive effects.

Isolation of Reserpine:
Extraction Methods:
Solvent Extraction:
Method: The dried roots of Rauvolfia serpentina are ground into a coarse powder, and the alkaloids are extracted using polar solvents like methanol, ethanol, or chloroform.
Procedure: The powdered plant material is soaked in the solvent for several hours. After filtration, the solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure to obtain a crude alkaloidal extract, which is then further purified.

Soxhlet Extraction:
Method: This method is more efficient than simple solvent extraction, as it allows continuous extraction of reserpine over several hours.
Procedure: The plant material is placed in a thimble, and the solvent, typically ethanol or chloroform, is heated and condensed back into the thimble, ensuring maximum extraction of reserpine.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):
Method: This modern extraction technique uses supercritical carbon dioxide (CO_2) to extract reserpine, which avoids the use of organic solvents.

Advantage: This method is more environmentally friendly and helps preserve the integrity of the alkaloid during extraction.
Purification:
After the initial extraction, reserpine can be further purified using several chromatographic techniques:

Liquid-Liquid Extraction:
Method: The crude extract is subjected to liquid-liquid extraction using solvents of different polarities (e.g., chloroform and water), which helps separate reserpine from other components.
Advantage: This technique helps isolate reserpine in relatively pure form.

Chromatography:
Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC): TLC is commonly used for a quick and preliminary identification of reserpine. A suitable solvent system like chloroform and methanol can be used, and reserpine can be identified by comparing its Rf value with that of a known standard.
Column Chromatography: This is used for further purification, typically using silica gel as a stationary phase and a solvent mixture like chloroform and methanol for mobile phase to separate reserpine from other compounds.
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC): HPLC is a highly efficient and accurate technique for purifying reserpine, and it can also be used for quantification.

Identification of Reserpine:
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Reserpine is typically a pale yellow to white crystalline powder.
Solubility: Reserpine is moderately soluble in ethanol and methanol but poorly soluble in water.
Melting Point: The melting point of reserpine is approximately 253–255°C.
Spectroscopic Methods:

Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: In the IR spectrum, reserpine shows characteristic absorption bands:
A broad band around 3200–3500 cm^{-1} corresponding to N-H stretching (amine group).
Aromatic C-H stretches around 2900–3100 cm^{-1}.
C=O stretching around 1700 cm^{-1} (carbonyl group)

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: The 1H NMR spectrum of reserpine reveals signals due to aromatic protons (around 7–8 ppm), as well as the presence of methyl and methine groups attached to the nitrogen and the indole ring system.
13C NMR: In the 13C NMR spectrum, distinct carbon signals are seen, indicating the presence of the indole ring structure and other carbons attached to the nitrogen.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The molecular ion of reserpine is observed at 610 m/z, corresponding to the molecular weight of reserpine. The fragmentation pattern helps identify the structure of reserpine, confirming its identity.

Analysis of Reserpine:
Quantification Methods:
UV-Vis Spectrophotometry:
Method: Reserpine can be quantified by measuring its absorbance in the UV range, typically around 289 nm. A calibration curve is prepared by using known concentrations of reserpine.
Advantage: This method is simple and cost-effective for routine analysis.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):

Method: HPLC is a widely used technique for both the identification and quantification of reserpine. It uses a reverse-phase column with a suitable mobile phase, such as a mixture of methanol and water. Reserpine can be detected using a UV detector at 289 nm.

Advantage: HPLC provides high accuracy and sensitivity, making it ideal for quantifying reserpine in plant extracts and pharmaceutical formulations.

Reserpine, derived from the roots of Rauvolfia serpentina, is a potent alkaloid with significant pharmacological activity, particularly in the treatment of hypertension and psychotic disorders. The isolation of reserpine is accomplished through efficient extraction methods like solvent extraction, Soxhlet extraction, and supercritical fluid extraction. Once isolated, it is purified using chromatography and identified through techniques such as IR, NMR, and MS spectroscopy. Quantification is done by UV-Vis spectrophotometry and HPLC. Biological testing confirms reserpine's antihypertensive and tranquilizing effects, while toxicological testing ensures its safety for medical use. Its effective use in clinical medicine makes it an essential compound in pharmacology.

Caffeine

Caffeine (1,3,7-trimethylxanthine) is a naturally occurring stimulant found in several plants, including Coffea (coffee), Thea (tea), Coca (coca), and Ilex (mate). It is widely consumed in beverages and is used in pharmaceuticals for its stimulating effects on the central nervous system, enhancing alertness and reducing fatigue.

Isolation of Caffeine:

Extraction Methods:

Solvent Extraction:

Method: The most common method of caffeine extraction from plant materials such as coffee beans or tea leaves involves using solvents like chloroform, methylene chloride, or ethyl acetate.

Procedure:

The plant material is powdered and extracted with a suitable solvent.

After the extraction, the solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue contains crude caffeine.

The crude extract can be purified further.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):

Method: Supercritical CO_2 is used to extract caffeine from plant materials.

Advantage: SFE is a cleaner extraction method that avoids the use of toxic solvents and maintains the purity of caffeine.

Procedure: The plant material is placed in a high-pressure chamber, and supercritical CO_2 is passed through the material to extract caffeine.

Water Extraction (Decaffeination Process):

Method: This method is commonly used for decaffeinating coffee and tea. Caffeine is extracted from the plant material using hot water.

Procedure: The water is passed through an activated charcoal or carbon filter, which adsorbs the caffeine. The process is then repeated to remove caffeine from the aqueous phase.

Purification:

After initial extraction, caffeine can be further purified using:

Liquid-Liquid Extraction:
Method: Crude caffeine is partitioned between a water phase and an organic solvent phase, usually dichloromethane or chloroform.
Advantage: This technique helps remove impurities and concentrate the caffeine.

Chromatography:
Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC): TLC is a fast method for identifying caffeine based on its Rf value compared to known standards.
Column Chromatography: Caffeine can be purified on a silica gel column using a solvent mixture like chloroform and methanol.
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC): HPLC can be used for more precise and efficient purification of caffeine from complex extracts. It provides accurate separation and quantification.

Identification of Caffeine:
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Caffeine is a white, crystalline powder or colorless needle-like crystals.
Solubility: Caffeine is slightly soluble in cold water but more soluble in hot water, ethanol, and chloroform.
Melting Point: Caffeine has a melting point around 238°C.

Spectroscopic Methods:
Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: The IR spectrum of caffeine shows characteristic peaks:
A C-H stretch around 2900 cm^{-1}.
A C=O stretch around 1700 cm^{-1}.
An N-H stretch near 3200 cm^{-1}, indicating the presence of the nitrogen atom in the xanthine ring.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: The 1H NMR spectrum of caffeine shows the presence of three methyl groups (around 3.3–4.0 ppm), one of which is attached to a nitrogen atom, and the protons of the aromatic ring (around 7–8 ppm).
13C NMR: The 13C NMR spectrum will show distinct carbon peaks corresponding to the aromatic carbons and the methyl groups, as well as the carbonyl carbon in the xanthine ring.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The molecular ion of caffeine appears at 194 m/z (molecular weight of caffeine). The fragmentation pattern can be used to further confirm its structure, with ions corresponding to smaller fragments like 138 m/z and 94 m/z.

Analysis of Caffeine:
Quantification Methods:
UV-Vis Spectrophotometry:
Method: Caffeine can be quantified by measuring absorbance at a wavelength of around 273 nm in an ultraviolet spectrophotometer.
Advantage: This method is simple and fast for routine analysis and can be used to determine caffeine concentration in beverages or pharmaceutical formulations.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is commonly used for the quantification of caffeine, especially in complex mixtures. It uses a reverse-phase column and a mobile phase such as methanol and water.
Detection: Caffeine is typically detected by UV absorption at 273 nm.

Advantage: HPLC is highly sensitive and can quantify caffeine in small concentrations, making it suitable for precise analysis.

Caffeine, a potent central nervous system stimulant, is widely used in beverages and pharmaceuticals. It is extracted from plants such as Coffea, Thea, and Coca using methods like solvent extraction, supercritical fluid extraction, and water extraction for decaffeination. After extraction, caffeine is purified using chromatographic techniques. It is identified by its physical characteristics and through spectroscopic methods like IR, NMR, and MS. Quantification of caffeine is commonly done using UV-Vis spectrophotometry and HPLC. Biological testing confirms caffeine's stimulant and diuretic effects, while toxicological testing ensures its safe use. Caffeine plays a significant role in the pharmaceutical industry and consumer products like energy drinks and medications.

Chapter 14
Isolation, Identification and Analysis of Resins

Podophyllotoxin, Curcumin

Resins

Resins are solid or semi-solid substances secreted by many plants, particularly conifers, as a response to injury. They are complex mixtures of volatile oils, terpenoids, phenolic compounds, and other organic molecules. Resins have diverse biological functions in plants, including defense against pathogens and herbivores. They are often used by plants as a protective barrier after wounding.

Chemically, resins are made up of terpenes and phenolic compounds. The exact composition varies depending on the plant species. For example, pine resin contains terpenes such as pinene, while frankincense resin contains boswellic acids and other triterpenoids. Resins are usually extracted by incising the plant and allowing the resin to ooze out or through distillation.

In terms of therapeutic uses, resins have antimicrobial, anti-inflammatory, and antioxidant properties. Frankincense, for example, is used in traditional medicine for its anti-inflammatory effects and is also used in aromatherapy. Myrrh resin is utilized for its wound-healing and antimicrobial properties. Resins are also used in the cosmetic and perfume industries for their aromatic qualities.

In addition to their medicinal uses, resins are important in the manufacturing of varnishes, adhesives, and incense. Colophony, derived from pine resin, is used in the production of soldering flux and as a component in adhesives and coatings. Resins are often extracted through direct collection from plant exudates or by solvent extraction.

Podophyllotoxin

Podophyllotoxin is a naturally occurring lignan, which is primarily isolated from the roots of Podophyllum peltatum (American mandrake or Mayapple) and Podophyllum hexandrum (Himalayan mayapple). It has significant pharmacological activity, particularly as a precursor in the synthesis of anticancer drugs like etoposide and teniposide.

Isolation of Podophyllotoxin:

Extraction Methods:

Solvent Extraction:

Method: Podophyllotoxin is typically extracted using organic solvents, with methanol, ethanol, or dichloromethane being common choices.

Procedure:

The dried and powdered roots of Podophyllum species are subjected to maceration with the chosen solvent. After a specific duration, the solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, leaving behind a crude extract that contains podophyllotoxin.

Soxhlet Extraction:

Method: This method involves continuous extraction using an organic solvent.

Procedure:

The powdered plant material is placed in a thimble in the Soxhlet apparatus, and the solvent (e.g., ethanol or acetone) is heated to extract podophyllotoxin.

The solvent is condensed and returned to the extraction chamber, continuously extracting the phytoconstituents.

The solvent is evaporated, and the residue is further processed for purification.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):
Method: Supercritical CO_2 extraction can be used for the isolation of podophyllotoxin.
Advantage: This technique is highly efficient and environmentally friendly as it avoids the use of harmful organic solvents.
Purification:
After initial extraction, podophyllotoxin can be further purified using:

Column Chromatography:
Method: The crude extract is passed through a silica gel column using a suitable elution solvent mixture (e.g., hexane, ethyl acetate, or chloroform-methanol).
Advantage: This technique allows for the separation of podophyllotoxin from other plant constituents.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is used to further purify podophyllotoxin to a high degree of purity.
Procedure: A reverse-phase HPLC method is commonly employed, using a C18 column and a gradient solvent system like methanol-water or acetonitrile-water.
Advantage: HPLC allows for precise quantification and purity determination.

Identification of Podophyllotoxin:
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Podophyllotoxin is a white to pale yellow crystalline compound.
Solubility: It is sparingly soluble in water but dissolves readily in organic solvents such as ethanol, methanol, and chloroform.
Melting Point: The melting point of podophyllotoxin is around 215°C.
Spectroscopic Methods:

Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: Podophyllotoxin exhibits characteristic IR absorption peaks:
The C-H stretch around 2900 cm^{-1} (aromatic).
The C=O stretch around 1700 cm^{-1} (lactone functional group).
The aromatic ring vibrations around 1600 cm^{-1} and 1500 cm^{-1}.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: The 1H NMR spectrum of podophyllotoxin shows aromatic protons (around 6.5–7.5 ppm), methylene protons (around 4.2–5.0 ppm), and methyl protons (around 1.2–2.0 ppm).
13C NMR: The 13C NMR spectrum of podophyllotoxin will show distinct signals corresponding to the aromatic carbons, the methylene carbons, and the carbonyl group of the lactone ring.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The molecular ion of podophyllotoxin appears at 414 m/z (molecular weight of podophyllotoxin). Fragmentation patterns give information about the structure of the compound.
Advantage: MS can be used to confirm the molecular weight and structural fragments of podophyllotoxin.

Analysis of Podophyllotoxin:
Quantification Methods:
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC is the most common method for quantifying podophyllotoxin in plant extracts and pharmaceutical formulations.

Procedure: A reverse-phase HPLC method is typically employed with a UV detector set at 285 nm for the detection of podophyllotoxin.
Advantage: HPLC offers precise and reliable quantification, even in complex matrices.

Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC):
Method: TLC can be used for both qualitative and semi-quantitative analysis of podophyllotoxin.
Procedure: A silica gel plate is used with an appropriate solvent system (e.g., chloroform-methanol), and the presence of podophyllotoxin can be detected using UV light or by spraying with a specific reagent.
Podophyllotoxin is an important lignan with significant pharmacological properties, particularly in anticancer and antiviral drug synthesis. It is typically extracted from the roots of Podophyllum species using methods such as solvent extraction, Soxhlet extraction, and supercritical fluid extraction. The compound is identified by its distinct physical characteristics and confirmed using spectroscopic techniques like IR, NMR, and MS. Quantification and analysis of podophyllotoxin are typically performed using HPLC, TLC, and other bioanalytical methods. Its biological activity includes anticancer, antiviral, and antioxidant effects, making it a crucial precursor for chemotherapy drugs like etoposide.

Curcumin
Curcumin is the primary bioactive compound found in the rhizomes of Curcuma longa (turmeric). It belongs to the class of polyphenolic compounds and is well-known for its wide array of therapeutic properties, particularly anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anticancer, and antimicrobial activities. However, due to its low bioavailability and stability, curcumin has been a subject of research for formulation improvements.

Isolation of Curcumin:
Extraction Methods:
Solvent Extraction:
Method: The rhizomes of Curcuma longa are powdered and subjected to extraction using solvents like ethanol, methanol, or acetone.
Procedure:
The plant material is macerated with the solvent, and the extraction is carried out for several hours.
Afterward, the solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, leaving a crude extract rich in curcumin and other curcuminoids.

Soxhlet Extraction:
Method: Soxhlet extraction is commonly used for the extraction of curcumin from Curcuma longa.
Procedure:
Powdered turmeric is placed in a Soxhlet extractor, and solvent (e.g., ethanol) is used to extract curcumin continuously.
The extract is then concentrated, and curcumin is separated from other components using chromatography.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE):
Method: Supercritical CO_2 is an efficient and environmentally friendly method to extract curcumin.
Advantage: This method minimizes the use of organic solvents, which makes it suitable for industrial scale-up.
Purification:After extraction, curcumin can be purified using:

Column Chromatography:
Method: The crude extract is subjected to column chromatography using a silica gel column.

Solvent System: A gradient solvent system with solvents such as hexane, chloroform, or ethyl acetate is typically used to separate curcumin from other curcuminoids (demethoxycurcumin and bisdemethoxycurcumin).
Advantage: This method results in high-purity curcumin.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: Reverse-phase HPLC is used to purify curcumin to a high degree.
Procedure: A C18 column is used with a mobile phase consisting of methanol and water (with slight modifications) to achieve the separation of curcumin from other compounds.
Advantage: This method allows for precise quantification and high purity.

Identification of Curcumin:
Physical Characteristics:
Appearance: Curcumin is a yellow-orange crystalline powder.
Solubility: It is soluble in organic solvents like ethanol, acetone, and chloroform but only sparingly soluble in water.
Melting Point: The melting point of curcumin is around 183°C.

Spectroscopic Methods:
Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy:
Method: Curcumin has characteristic IR absorption bands:
The O-H stretch around 3400 cm^{-1} (phenolic OH groups).
The C=O stretch around 1630 cm^{-1} (aromatic carbonyl group).
The C-H stretch and bending vibrations of the aromatic rings around 1600–1500 cm^{-1}.

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy:
1H NMR: The 1H NMR spectrum of curcumin shows aromatic protons around 6.0–7.5 ppm, and the -OCH3 groups (methoxy) at around 3.8 ppm.
13C NMR: The 13C NMR spectrum provides signals for the aromatic carbons, methoxy groups, and the carbonyl group of curcumin.

Mass Spectrometry (MS):
Method: The molecular ion of curcumin appears at 368 m/z (molecular weight of curcumin). Fragmentation patterns offer additional information on the structure of curcumin.
Advantage: MS helps confirm the molecular weight and structural features of curcumin.

Analysis of Curcumin:
Quantification Methods:
High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC):
Method: HPLC with UV detection at 420 nm is used to quantify curcumin in plant extracts, formulations, or biological samples.
Procedure: The reverse-phase column with methanol-water gradient system separates curcumin from other compounds.
Advantage: HPLC provides high accuracy and precision for quantification of curcumin.

Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC):
Method: TLC is used for both qualitative and semi-quantitative analysis of curcumin.
Procedure: A silica gel plate is used with an appropriate solvent system (e.g., chloroform-methanol), and curcumin is visualized under UV light.

Advantage: TLC is a rapid and cost-effective method for identifying curcumin.

Curcumin is a powerful polyphenolic compound with a broad spectrum of pharmacological activities. It is commonly extracted from Curcuma longa through solvent extraction, Soxhlet extraction, or supercritical fluid extraction. Curcumin is identified by its distinctive physical properties and confirmed using advanced spectroscopic techniques like IR, NMR, and MS. Quantification is typically performed using HPLC or TLC. Curcumin demonstrates significant biological activities, including anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anticancer, and antimicrobial properties, which contribute to its therapeutic potential. Ongoing research focuses on improving its bioavailability and stability for more effective clinical applications.

Unit-IV

Chapter:15

Industrial production, estimation and utilization of phytoconstituents

Forskolin, Sennoside, Artemisinin, Diosgenin, Digoxin, Atropine, Podophyllotoxin, Caffeine, Taxol, Vincristine and Vinblastine

Phytoconstituents are bioactive compounds naturally occurring in plants, such as alkaloids, flavonoids, glycosides, terpenoids, and phenolics. Their industrial significance lies in their therapeutic, cosmetic, and nutritional properties, making them valuable in the pharmaceutical, food, and cosmetic industries.

Industrial Production:

Phytoconstituents are extracted and processed on a large scale using advanced techniques like solvent extraction, supercritical fluid extraction, and chromatography. This ensures the isolation of high-purity compounds suitable for use in various formulations.

Estimation:

Quantitative and qualitative estimation of phytoconstituents involves methods such as spectrophotometry, high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), and gas chromatography (GC). These techniques ensure accurate measurement of the active components to maintain efficacy and safety.

Utilization:

Phytoconstituents are widely utilized in:

Pharmaceuticals: As active ingredients in drugs (e.g., alkaloids for pain relief).

Cosmetics: For skin care and anti-aging products (e.g., flavonoids as antioxidants).

Food Industry: As preservatives or nutritional supplements (e.g., terpenoids as flavoring agents).

Efforts in this domain focus on sustainable sourcing, cost-effective processes, and enhanced bioavailability to maximize the benefits of these natural compounds.

Forskolin

Chemically, forskolin is a labdane diterpene that is extracted from the pulverized dried plant material of Coleus forskohlii, a member of the Lamiaceae (mint) family. Coleus forskohlii is widely found in the arid and semi-arid regions of India, Nepal, and Thailand. The plant's roots have a long history of use in Ayurvedic medicine, where it has been traditionally used to treat heart and lung diseases, intestinal spasms, insomnia, and convulsions.

Industrial Production:

The industrial production of forskolin involves several key steps to extract and purify the compound:

Collection and Preparation: Tubers of C. forskohlii are collected, washed, dried, and pulverized into granules.

Extraction: The crushed plant material is subjected to extraction using methanol as a solvent. This results in a crude methanol extract.

Concentration and Separation: The methanol extract is concentrated, and chloroform is added to the concentrate. An equal volume of water is then added to the mixture, which is shaken thoroughly and allowed to settle. The chloroform layer is separated.

Purification: The process is repeated by adding water and separating the chloroform layer multiple times. The final chloroform layer is concentrated.

Crystallization: Forskolin is precipitated using ice-cold n-hexane.

Final Product: Forskolin is obtained as a reddish-brown to brown-colored powder, ready for further use in formulations and products.

Estimation:

Forskolin content in raw material is estimated using High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC). The raw material should contain at least 1% forskolin on a dry basis.

Chromatographic Conditions:

Mobile phase: A degassed mixture of 55 volumes of water and 45 volumes of acetonitrile.

Column: A stainless-steel column (250 × 4.6 mm) packed with octadecylsilane bonded to porous silica.

Detector: Photodiode array or UV detector.

Wavelength: 220 nm.

Flow rate: 1.8 ml/min.

Run time: 60 minutes.

Injection volume: 20 µl.

Standard Preparation:

Accurately weigh 10 mg of forskolin reference standard and dissolve it in acetonitrile to make a 10 ml solution.

Sample Preparation:

Weigh 3 g of coarse powder sample and extract with acetonitrile by boiling for 20 minutes. Repeat this process until a colorless extract is obtained, then concentrate and filter it.

Procedure:

Inject the standard and sample solutions into the HPLC system. Calculate the forskolin content in the sample based on the peak responses from the chromatogram.

Utilization:

Forskolin has a wide range of medicinal and therapeutic uses, particularly in Ayurvedic medicine and modern pharmacology:

Ayurvedic Uses:

Cardiovascular Health: Forskolin is traditionally used to treat heart diseases, including angina and other cardiovascular disorders.

Respiratory Conditions: It is effective in treating respiratory disorders such as asthma, bronchitis, and psoriasis.

Abdominal Issues: Forskolin is used for treating intestinal disorders like abdominal colic and constipation.

Nervous System: It is used to manage conditions such as insomnia, convulsions, and epilepsy.

Topical Applications:

Wound Healing: The roots are applied topically to treat infections caused by worms and relieve the burning sensation in festering boils.

Skin Care: The root extract mixed with mustard oil is used to treat eczema and other skin infections.

Hair Treatment:

Forskolin is used in medicinal formulations to prevent hair graying and restore normal hair color.

Pharmacological Applications:

Forskolin is known to increase intracellular cAMP levels, making it useful in treating diseases where reduced cAMP is a major factor, such as eczema, asthma, hypertension, and cardiovascular disorders.

As an immunomodulator, forskolin activates macrophages and lymphocytes, enhancing immune system function.

In conclusion, forskolin is a versatile phytochemical with significant therapeutic potential, especially in treating respiratory, cardiovascular, and skin disorders. Its use in modern medicine and traditional practices highlights its broad applicability in improving human health.

Sennoside

Sennosides are a group of anthraquinone glycosides, primarily derived from the dried fruits of Cassia angustifolia (senna), a member of the Fabaceae (legume) family. Senna is widely cultivated in tropical and

subtropical regions, with a significant presence in countries like India, Egypt, and parts of Africa. Traditionally, senna has been used as a laxative in herbal medicine, especially for the treatment of constipation.

Industrial Production:

The industrial production of sennosides typically follows the steps below:

Harvesting and Preparation: Senna plants are harvested once they reach maturity. The dried fruits, primarily the seeds and pods, are collected and carefully washed to remove impurities.

Extraction: The dried plant material is subjected to extraction using polar solvents such as ethanol, methanol, or water. This process extracts the active components, mainly sennosides A and B, from the plant material.

Purification: After extraction, the crude extract is concentrated and treated to remove impurities. This is done through methods like liquid-liquid partitioning, adsorption, and chromatographic separation.

Crystallization: Sennosides are further purified by crystallization techniques, often using solvents such as acetone or methanol.

Final Product: The purified sennosides are then dried to obtain a fine powder or used in formulations like tablets, syrups, or capsules.

Estimation:

Sennoside content in senna products is typically estimated using High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC). This method helps determine the concentration of active anthraquinone glycosides, which should typically be ≥ 4% sennoside content in the dried plant material for therapeutic efficacy.

Chromatographic Conditions:

Mobile phase: A mixture of water and acetonitrile (usually in a gradient system).

Column: A reverse-phase C18 column.

Detector: UV detector, typically set at 254 nm.

Flow rate: 1.0 ml/min.

Run time: 30-40 minutes.

Injection volume: 20 µl.

Standard and Sample Preparation:

The standard preparation involves preparing a known quantity of sennosides (e.g., sennoside A or B) and diluting to a known concentration.

The sample preparation involves extracting the active compounds from senna powder using a suitable solvent, followed by filtration and concentration.

The amount of sennoside is calculated by comparing the peak area of the sample with that of the standard.

Utilization:

Sennosides are primarily used for their laxative properties. They act by stimulating the muscles of the colon, promoting bowel movement, and easing constipation.

Laxative Use:

The most common use of senna and its active components, sennosides A and B, is as an over-the-counter stimulant laxative. They are commonly used in treating occasional constipation.

Senna-based products, such as senna tablets or syrups, are widely available in pharmacies for short-term relief.

Medicinal Uses:

Senna has been historically used in traditional medicine systems, including Ayurveda and Traditional Chinese Medicine, for treating constipation, abdominal pain, and to promote digestive health.

It is also used in the preparation of herbal teas that aid in bowel regularity.

Clinical Use:

Sennosides are sometimes used as a preparation for colonoscopy due to their ability to clean the intestines before the procedure.
In some cases, senna is used in the management of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and bowel irregularities under medical supervision.
Cosmetic and Health Products:
Sennoside is used in some skin care formulations, particularly those targeting cellulite or promoting detoxification, as it helps in purging the body of waste products through increased bowel movements.
Safety and Side Effects:
While senna is generally considered safe when used appropriately, overuse can lead to dehydration, electrolyte imbalance, and dependence on laxatives for bowel movement.
It is advised not to use senna for extended periods without medical guidance.

Artemisinin
Artemisinin is a naturally occurring sesquiterpene lactone derived from the plant Artemisia annua, commonly known as sweet wormwood. This plant has been used in traditional Chinese medicine for centuries, particularly for the treatment of fevers. Artemisinin has gained significant attention in modern medicine due to its potent antimalarial properties and its ability to treat Plasmodium falciparum-induced malaria, especially in regions where resistance to other antimalarial drugs is a concern.

Industrial Production:
The industrial production of artemisinin involves several steps:
Cultivation and Harvesting:
Artemisia annua is cultivated in temperate and tropical regions. The plant grows best in well-drained soil with ample sunlight. Harvesting typically occurs when the plants are in full bloom, as this is when artemisinin content is highest.
Extraction:
Artemisinin is primarily extracted from the leaves and flowering tops of Artemisia annua using organic solvents such as hexane or ethanol. The dried plant material is first pulverized, and then solvent extraction is carried out to obtain the crude artemisinin.
Purification:
The crude extract undergoes several purification steps, including liquid-liquid partitioning, chromatographic techniques like column chromatography, and recrystallization to isolate pure artemisinin.
Synthesis of Semi-synthetic Derivatives:
In addition to direct extraction, semi-synthetic methods have been developed to produce artemisinin derivatives like artesunate and artemether. These derivatives are more water-soluble and have improved bioavailability, making them easier to use in the treatment of malaria.
Final Product:
The purified artemisinin is used to create formulations such as oral tablets, intravenous injections, or combination therapy with other antimalarial drugs.

Estimation:
Artemisinin content in plant material and final formulations can be estimated using High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC), Thin-Layer Chromatography (TLC), or UV-visible spectrophotometry.
HPLC Conditions for Estimation:
Mobile Phase: A mixture of acetonitrile and water (typically 70:30 v/v) is used.
Column: Reverse-phase C18 column (250 × 4.6 mm).
Detector: UV detector at 254 nm.
Flow Rate: 1.0 ml/min.
Injection Volume: 20 µL.

Run Time: Approximately 20 minutes.
Standard and Sample Preparation:
Standard preparation involves dissolving a known quantity of pure artemisinin in a suitable solvent to prepare a stock solution.
Sample preparation involves extracting artemisinin from plant material or pharmaceutical preparations, followed by filtration and concentration.
The percentage of artemisinin in the sample is calculated by comparing the area under the peak obtained from the sample with that from the standard.

Utilization:
Artemisinin and its derivatives have wide-ranging therapeutic applications, most notably in the treatment of malaria. The significant uses of artemisinin include:
Antimalarial Treatment:
Artemisinin is the primary treatment for malaria caused by Plasmodium falciparum. It is used in combination with other antimalarial drugs (such as lumefantrine, mefloquine, or piperaquine) to enhance efficacy and prevent the development of drug resistance.
Artemisinin-based Combination Therapies (ACTs) are the gold standard for treating drug-resistant malaria and are recommended by the World Health Organization (WHO) for first-line treatment of uncomplicated malaria.
Anticancer Properties:
Emerging research has shown that artemisinin and its derivatives may have potential in cancer treatment. Artemisinin exhibits selective cytotoxicity toward cancer cells due to the presence of iron in the cancerous tissues, which triggers the release of free radicals when combined with artemisinin.
Anti-inflammatory and Immunomodulatory Effects:
Artemisinin has shown potential for anti-inflammatory effects and may be useful in treating diseases like rheumatoid arthritis and autoimmune disorders. It also has immunomodulatory properties, which could help regulate immune responses.
Antiviral Activity:
Preliminary studies indicate that artemisinin derivatives may have activity against certain viruses, including hepatitis B and C, although more research is required in this area.
Topical Applications:
Artemisinin has been investigated for its potential in topical treatments, particularly for skin infections and wound healing, as it possesses antibacterial and antifungal properties.
Veterinary Medicine:
Artemisinin and its derivatives are also used in veterinary medicine for the treatment of malaria in animals and other parasitic infections.

Diosgenin
Diosgenin is a steroidal saponin found in several plants, including Dioscorea species (yam), especially Dioscorea villosa, commonly known as wild yam. Diosgenin is of considerable importance due to its role as a precursor in the synthesis of steroid hormones and its wide range of medicinal uses. Diosgenin has been traditionally used in various cultures to treat ailments such as arthritis, menstrual problems, and menopause symptoms, and it is also utilized in the pharmaceutical industry for the production of steroid drugs.

Industrial Production:
The industrial production of diosgenin involves several key steps:
Cultivation:

The primary source of diosgenin is the yam plant, particularly Dioscorea species, which are cultivated in tropical and subtropical regions, including parts of Asia, Africa, and Central America. The tubers of the plant are the most important source of diosgenin.

Harvesting and Preparation:

The tubers are harvested after the plant has matured, typically when the diosgenin content is highest. The tubers are cleaned, peeled, and dried. Once dried, they are pulverized into powder to facilitate extraction.

Extraction:

Solvent extraction is used to isolate diosgenin from the powdered yam tuber. Organic solvents like methanol or ethanol are often employed to extract the crude saponins, which contain diosgenin. The extract is then filtered and concentrated.

Purification:

The crude extract is purified using liquid-liquid extraction methods or column chromatography. The crude diosgenin is further purified to remove any impurities and unwanted compounds.

Synthesis of Steroid Derivatives:

Diosgenin is a valuable precursor in the production of steroid hormones like progesterone, cortisone, hydrocortisone, and estrogen. Industrial synthesis processes involve converting diosgenin into these hormones using chemical modifications, typically in pharmaceutical laboratories.

Final Product:

After purification, diosgenin is obtained as a white crystalline powder and used either directly in pharmaceutical formulations or as an intermediate for producing steroid-based drugs.

Estimation:

The estimation of diosgenin in raw plant material or processed products is crucial for quality control and pharmaceutical applications. Common methods for the estimation of diosgenin include High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC), Gas Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry (GC-MS), and UV spectrophotometry.

HPLC Conditions for Diosgenin:

Mobile Phase: A mixture of acetonitrile and water (in various proportions depending on the application).

Column: Reverse-phase C18 column (250 × 4.6 mm).

Detector: UV detector (at 210 nm or 240 nm).

Flow Rate: Typically 1.0 ml/min.

Injection Volume: 10-20 µL.

Run Time: 15–20 minutes.

Sample Preparation:

A measured quantity of raw material or extract is dissolved in an appropriate solvent, followed by filtration to remove any particulates. The sample is then subjected to HPLC analysis to quantify the diosgenin content.

Utilization

Diosgenin has a wide array of medicinal and industrial applications. Some of the significant uses of diosgenin include:

Steroid Hormone Production:

Diosgenin is a critical precursor in the production of steroid hormones, including progesterone, cortisone, hydrocortisone, prednisone, and estrogen. These hormones are used in the treatment of various conditions such as inflammatory disorders, hormonal imbalances, contraceptives, and menopause symptoms.

Anti-inflammatory Properties:

Diosgenin has been shown to have anti-inflammatory effects. It is used in the treatment of arthritis, muscle pain, and inflammatory diseases. Diosgenin-based compounds are also investigated for their potential in treating cancer and autoimmune conditions.

Antioxidant and Antimicrobial Activity:

Diosgenin possesses antioxidant properties that help in preventing oxidative stress and the damage caused by free radicals. It also exhibits antimicrobial activity against a range of bacteria and fungi, which makes it a potential agent in treating skin infections and other microbial diseases.
Cardioprotective Effects:
Studies have shown that diosgenin can have beneficial effects on the cardiovascular system, helping in lowering blood pressure, improving lipid profiles, and reducing the risk of atherosclerosis. It has also been studied for its potential to improve heart health.
Improvement of Menopausal Symptoms:
Diosgenin is commonly used in herbal remedies aimed at alleviating menopausal symptoms, such as hot flashes, night sweats, and mood swings. It is often marketed in combination with other herbal ingredients as part of natural hormone replacement therapies.
Cosmetic Uses:

Diosgenin and its derivatives are used in cosmetic products for their anti-aging properties, as they may help in maintaining skin elasticity and preventing wrinkles. It is also included in formulations aimed at treating skin conditions like eczema and acne.
Weight Management:
Diosgenin has been suggested to have anti-obesity effects by improving lipid metabolism and regulating fat accumulation. It is sometimes used in weight loss supplements.
Diabetes Management:
Some studies indicate that diosgenin may help in regulating blood sugar levels and improving insulin sensitivity, thus aiding in the management of type 2 diabetes.

Digoxin
Digoxin is a cardiac glycoside derived from the foxglove plant (Digitalis purpurea). It is widely used in the treatment of heart failure and arrhythmias, particularly in atrial fibrillation. As one of the most well-known and commonly used glycosides, digoxin has been used in traditional medicine for centuries and remains a critical agent in modern cardiovascular therapy. It is primarily used to increase the force of myocardial contraction and to control heart rate in patients with heart disease.

Industrial Production:
The industrial production of digoxin involves extracting the compound from the leaves of Digitalis species, particularly Digitalis purpurea and Digitalis lanata, which are cultivated specifically for their high glycoside content. The process includes several steps to isolate, purify, and standardize digoxin.
Key Steps in Industrial Production:
Cultivation of Digitalis:
The first step in the production of digoxin is the cultivation of Digitalis plants, specifically Digitalis purpurea and Digitalis lanata, which are grown in suitable climates. These plants are typically cultivated in temperate regions with well-drained soil and adequate sunlight. The leaves of the plants are the primary source of cardiac glycosides.
Harvesting and Drying:
Once the plants reach maturity, the leaves are harvested. Fresh leaves are collected during the flowering stage when the glycoside content is highest. The leaves are washed and then dried to preserve the active compounds.
Extraction:
The dried leaves are powdered, and the glycosides are extracted using organic solvents such as methanol or ethanol. The extraction is usually carried out in a Soxhlet apparatus or using other solvent extraction methods to obtain a crude extract that contains digoxin.
Purification:

The crude extract is subjected to further purification using techniques such as liquid-liquid extraction or column chromatography. Thin-layer chromatography (TLC) or HPLC (High-Performance Liquid Chromatography) can be used to monitor the purity and yield of digoxin during the purification process.
Standardization:
The final digoxin extract is standardized to ensure consistency in potency. This step is critical for ensuring that each batch of digoxin meets the required pharmacological standards for medicinal use.
Formulation:
Once purified, digoxin is formulated into tablets, capsules, or injectable preparations. The dosage form is determined based on the clinical needs of the patient, with careful attention to maintaining the therapeutic index.
Estimation
The estimation of digoxin in raw materials, formulations, or biological fluids is essential for quality control and ensuring accurate dosing. The most common methods for estimating digoxin content are High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC), spectrophotometry, and immunoassays.
HPLC Conditions for Digoxin:
Mobile Phase: A mixture of acetonitrile and water or a buffer solution (e.g., phosphate buffer) is used for the separation of digoxin.
Column: Reverse-phase C18 column (250 × 4.6 mm).
Detector: UV detector, typically at 220 nm.
Flow Rate: 1.0 mL/min.
Injection Volume: 10-20 µL.
Run Time: 15–30 minutes.
Sample Preparation:
To estimate digoxin in tablets or raw plant material, an appropriate quantity of the sample is dissolved in acetonitrile or a buffer solution, filtered, and injected into the HPLC system. The concentration of digoxin is determined by comparing the sample's peak area with the peak area of a standard digoxin solution.

Utilization:
Digoxin has several critical therapeutic uses, particularly in the management of cardiac conditions. Its ability to increase myocardial contractility and reduce heart rate makes it effective for treating conditions like heart failure and arrhythmias.
Key Uses of Digoxin:
Heart Failure:
Digoxin is commonly used in the treatment of congestive heart failure (CHF), particularly when the heart's ability to pump blood effectively is impaired. It increases the force of contraction of the heart muscle, which improves cardiac output and helps to alleviate symptoms of fluid retention and fatigue.
Arrhythmias:
Digoxin is used to treat certain types of arrhythmias, including atrial fibrillation (AF) and atrial flutter, by slowing down the heart rate and restoring normal rhythm. It helps in controlling ventricular rate in AF by increasing the vagal tone and slowing conduction through the atrioventricular (AV) node.
Antiarrhythmic Action:
Digoxin has a direct effect on the heart's electrical conduction system, making it useful in supraventricular arrhythmias. It is commonly used in combination with other medications to manage heart rhythm disturbances.
Symptomatic Relief:
Digoxin provides symptomatic relief in patients with chronic heart conditions, including shortness of breath, swelling, and fatigue, which are common in heart failure.
Other Potential Uses:

While digoxin is most commonly used in cardiovascular diseases, it is also being explored for cancer treatment in some research settings. The compound has shown some cytotoxic activity in laboratory studies, although its clinical application for cancer is still under investigation.
Veterinary Use:
Digoxin is also used in veterinary medicine to treat heart conditions in animals, including dogs and cats suffering from congestive heart failure and arrhythmias.
Therapeutic Monitoring:
Due to its narrow therapeutic window, digoxin toxicity can occur if levels exceed the therapeutic range. Toxicity can lead to symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, dizziness, and visual disturbances. As a result, digoxin levels are carefully monitored in patients to avoid overdosage.

Atropine
Atropine is a tropane alkaloid extracted primarily from the plant Atropa belladonna, also known as deadly nightshade, and other species of the Solanaceae family, such as Scopolamine (hyoscyamus). Atropine has been widely used in medicine for centuries due to its anticholinergic properties. It is commonly used to treat bradycardia (slow heart rate), organophosphate poisoning, and as a pre-anesthetic agent. Atropine works by blocking the action of acetylcholine at muscarinic receptors, particularly in the heart and smooth muscles.

Industrial Production:
The industrial production of atropine involves the extraction and purification of the alkaloid from the Atropa belladonna plant, which has historically been cultivated for its medicinal properties. The production process also includes the synthesis of atropine via chemical means, although plant extraction remains the primary method.

Key Steps in Industrial Production:
Cultivation of Atropa belladonna:
Atropa belladonna is grown in temperate climates, particularly in regions like Europe and Asia. The plant is harvested during its flowering stage to maximize the alkaloid content, especially in the leaves and roots.
Harvesting and Drying:
The plant's leaves, which contain the highest concentration of atropine, are harvested and dried in a controlled environment to preserve the active compound. The leaves are then processed to reduce the moisture content before extraction.
Extraction:
The dried leaves are powdered and then extracted using organic solvents such as ethanol or methanol. The extraction process is typically performed using Soxhlet extraction or other solvent-based methods to isolate atropine from the plant material.
Purification:
The crude extract is purified using techniques such as liquid-liquid extraction or column chromatography. Atropine is separated from other alkaloids, such as scopolamine, through chromatographic separation methods like high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC).
Formulation:
After purification, the resulting atropine is formulated into various medicinal preparations, such as injectable solutions, oral tablets, and eye drops. The dosage form depends on the therapeutic use, with injectable solutions being the most common for emergency treatments.

Estimation:
Atropine estimation in plant extracts, formulations, and biological samples is crucial for ensuring quality control and standardization. The most widely used method for quantifying atropine is High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC), though spectrophotometric methods are also used in some settings.

HPLC Conditions for Atropine:
Mobile Phase: A mixture of water and acetonitrile with a buffer (such as phosphate or acetate) to achieve proper separation of atropine from other compounds.
Column: C18 column (250 × 4.6 mm), which is commonly used for alkaloid separation.
Detector: UV detector set at 210 nm, the most commonly used wavelength for atropine detection.
Flow Rate: 1.0-1.5 mL/min.
Injection Volume: Typically 10-20 µL.
Run Time: 15–30 minutes.
Sample Preparation:
The crude plant extract or formulated product is dissolved in a solvent like methanol or ethanol, and the solution is filtered before being injected into the HPLC system. The resulting peak area is compared to the standard atropine solution to calculate the atropine content in the sample.

Utilization:
Atropine has multiple therapeutic applications, particularly in cardiology, emergency medicine, and ophthalmology. Its primary mechanism of action is the blockade of muscarinic acetylcholine receptors, which leads to various physiological effects, such as increased heart rate, reduced secretions, and smooth muscle relaxation.
Key Uses of Atropine:
Treatment of Bradycardia:
Atropine is commonly used to treat bradycardia, or an abnormally slow heart rate. It works by blocking the vagus nerve's action on the heart, leading to increased heart rate. It is typically used in emergency settings, such as during cardiac arrest or in patients with severe bradycardia.
Antidote for Organophosphate Poisoning:
Atropine is a first-line treatment for poisoning caused by organophosphates (e.g., pesticides, nerve agents), which inhibit acetylcholinesterase and lead to an overaccumulation of acetylcholine in the body. Atropine acts by blocking the muscarinic receptors, counteracting the toxic effects such as excessive salivation, sweating, and respiratory distress.
Pre-anesthetic Medication:
Atropine is used as a pre-anesthetic agent to reduce salivation and respiratory secretions before surgery. It also helps to prevent vagal reflexes during surgery, particularly in cardiac surgery, by ensuring stable heart rate.

Ophthalmology:
In eye care, atropine is used as eye drops to dilate the pupils (mydriasis) for diagnostic procedures, such as retinal exams, or in the treatment of eye infections. It can also be used to treat iritis (inflammation of the iris) and uveitis (inflammation of the uveal tract) by relaxing the eye muscles.
Treatment of Gastrointestinal Disorders:
Due to its antispasmodic effects, atropine has been used to treat irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and other gastrointestinal disorders, where it can relieve spasms in the smooth muscles of the digestive tract.
Motion Sickness:
Atropine is occasionally used in the form of patches or tablets to prevent motion sickness by blocking parasympathetic activity that leads to nausea and vomiting during travel.
Asthma and Bronchospasms:
While less commonly used today, atropine was historically used to treat asthma and bronchospasms due to its ability to dilate the bronchi by inhibiting parasympathetic stimulation.
Veterinary Medicine:
Atropine is also widely used in veterinary medicine to treat bradycardia, organophosphate poisoning, and other medical conditions in animals.

Podophyllotoxin

Podophyllotoxin is a lignan compound primarily extracted from the roots and rhizomes of the plant Podophyllum peltatum (American mayapple) and Podophyllum hexandrum (Indian mayapple). It is known for its antitumor and antiviral properties, especially as a precursor in the synthesis of etoposide and teniposide, two important chemotherapeutic agents used in the treatment of various cancers. Podophyllotoxin has a long history of medicinal use and is particularly significant in phytomedicine for its ability to inhibit DNA topoisomerase II, which is essential for cell division.

Industrial Production:

The industrial production of podophyllotoxin involves extraction from Podophyllum species, followed by purification and chemical synthesis to obtain derivatives used in cancer treatment. While Podophyllum species are cultivated in certain regions, the extraction process is labor-intensive and must be done with care due to the toxic nature of the plant parts.

Key Steps in Industrial Production:

Cultivation and Harvesting:

Podophyllum peltatum and Podophyllum hexandrum are grown for their high podophyllotoxin content in regions such as North America and the Himalayan mountains. The roots and rhizomes are the primary source of the compound.

The plants are harvested after 2-3 years of growth when podophyllotoxin levels are the highest, usually in the late summer or early fall.

Drying and Pulverizing:

The harvested roots and rhizomes are washed thoroughly to remove soil and dirt, then dried under controlled conditions to preserve the active compounds. After drying, they are pulverized into a fine powder.

Extraction:

The powdered plant material undergoes solvent extraction, typically using organic solvents such as methanol, acetone, or chloroform. This step is performed using techniques such as Soxhlet extraction or maceration.

The extract is then filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a crude podophyllotoxin extract.

Purification:

The crude extract is purified using column chromatography or high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) to isolate pure podophyllotoxin. The compound is carefully separated from other lignans, such as podophyllin and hyperforin.

Synthesis of Derivatives:

Pure podophyllotoxin can be chemically modified to produce etoposide or teniposide, which are used as chemotherapeutic agents. The derivatives are produced by adding specific chemical groups to the podophyllotoxin structure.

Formulation:

Podophyllotoxin is also used topically in certain antiviral treatments for warts, such as in the treatment of genital warts caused by the human papillomavirus (HPV). It is formulated into ointments or creams with appropriate concentrations for external application.

Estimation:

To ensure the quality control and standardization of podophyllotoxin in plant extracts and pharmaceutical formulations, accurate estimation is essential. High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) is the most common method used for the estimation of podophyllotoxin.

HPLC Conditions for Podophyllotoxin:

Mobile Phase: A mixture of methanol and water (or acetonitrile) with a buffer (e.g., phosphate buffer) to achieve optimal separation.

Column: C18 column (250 × 4.6 mm), a common column used for the separation of non-polar compounds like podophyllotoxin.
Detector: UV detector set at a wavelength of 254 nm, where podophyllotoxin absorbs.
Flow Rate: Typically 1.0–1.5 mL/min.
Injection Volume: 10-20 µL.
Run Time: 15-30 minutes.
Sample Preparation:
Weigh a known amount of podophyllum powder or extracted sample.
Extract the sample with an appropriate solvent like methanol or acetone.
Filter the extract and dilute with solvent as necessary before injection into the HPLC system.

Utilization:
Podophyllotoxin has a range of therapeutic applications, especially in oncology and dermatology. It is primarily known for its anticancer properties, but also for its use in treating viral infections such as HPV.
Key Uses of Podophyllotoxin:
Cancer Treatment:
Podophyllotoxin derivatives, such as etoposide and teniposide, are chemotherapeutic agents used to treat various cancers, including lung cancer, testicular cancer, and lymphomas.
The mechanism of action is through topoisomerase II inhibition, which prevents DNA replication and induces cell death in rapidly dividing cancer cells.
Topical Antiviral Treatment:
Podophyllotoxin is used topically in the form of creams or ointments for the treatment of genital warts caused by human papillomavirus (HPV). It works by causing cellular damage and inhibiting cell division, which helps to remove the wart tissue.
Treatment of Precancerous Lesions:
Podophyllotoxin is also used for precancerous lesions or abnormal growths caused by HPV, including those found in the cervix and anogenital areas. The compound is applied locally to prevent the progression to invasive cancer.
Antibacterial and Antifungal Activity:
Podophyllotoxin exhibits mild antibacterial and antifungal properties, making it useful for treating certain skin infections, though this is not its primary use.
Anti-inflammatory Effects:
The compound has also been studied for its potential anti-inflammatory effects, which could make it useful in treating diseases that involve inflammation.
Veterinary Use:
Podophyllotoxin has been investigated for use in veterinary medicine for the treatment of warts and other skin lesions in animals.

Caffeine
Caffeine, a naturally occurring alkaloid from the xanthine family, is a central nervous system stimulant widely consumed worldwide, primarily through beverages like coffee, tea, and energy drinks. It is derived from several plant species, most notably Coffea arabica (coffee plant), Camellia sinensis (tea plant), and Theobroma cacao (cocoa plant). Caffeine works by antagonizing the adenosine receptors in the brain, thereby increasing alertness and reducing fatigue. Apart from its stimulating effects, caffeine also has various medicinal uses in pharmacology, especially for pain relief and respiratory disorders.

Industrial Production:

Caffeine is produced both from natural sources (through extraction from plants) and through synthetic processes. The natural extraction process primarily involves solvent extraction, supercritical CO_2 extraction, or water-based extraction from caffeine-rich plants like coffee beans, tea leaves, and kola nuts.

Key Steps in Industrial Production:

Harvesting and Drying:

Caffeine is obtained from coffee beans, tea leaves, and other caffeine-containing plants. The plants are harvested at optimal stages and are either dried immediately or roasted (in the case of coffee) to prepare them for extraction.

Extraction from Plant Material:

The most common method for caffeine extraction is solvent extraction, where coffee beans or tea leaves are soaked in a solvent (e.g., methylene chloride, ethyl acetate, or supercritical CO_2) to extract caffeine.

Supercritical CO_2 extraction is a cleaner, more environmentally friendly method, where carbon dioxide is used under high pressure to extract caffeine without leaving harmful residues.

The solvent or CO_2 extract is then evaporated, and the caffeine is isolated and purified.

Purification:

After extraction, the caffeine extract is purified using methods like filtration, crystallization, or high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC). This ensures the final product is of high purity for industrial use.

Synthesis of Synthetic Caffeine:

Synthetic caffeine is manufactured from theobromine, a related alkaloid, through a multi-step chemical process. The synthesis involves methylation of theobromine to form caffeine. This is a less common method but provides a cost-effective alternative for large-scale caffeine production.

Formulation:

Once caffeine is extracted and purified, it is incorporated into a variety of consumer products, including soft drinks, energy drinks, medications, and dietary supplements.

Estimation:

The estimation of caffeine content in plant extracts, beverages, and pharmaceutical formulations is commonly performed using techniques like High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) or Gas Chromatography (GC). These methods offer high sensitivity and specificity for quantifying caffeine.

HPLC Conditions for Caffeine Estimation:

Mobile Phase: A mixture of water and methanol or acetonitrile. The mobile phase is selected to optimize caffeine separation from other compounds in the sample.

Column: A C18 column (250 × 4.6 mm) is typically used for caffeine separation.

Detector: UV detector set at 273 nm, which is the characteristic absorption wavelength of caffeine.

Flow Rate: Typically 1.0 mL/min.

Run Time: Approximately 10–15 minutes.

Injection Volume: 20 µL.

Sample Preparation for Caffeine Quantification:

Prepare the sample (e.g., coffee, tea, or energy drink) by diluting with an appropriate solvent like water or methanol.

Filter the sample through a 0.45 µm membrane filter to remove any particulate matter.

Inject the prepared sample into the HPLC system.

Quantify the caffeine content by comparing the area of the caffeine peak with a caffeine standard.

Utilization:
Caffeine has extensive use in medicinal, pharmaceutical, cosmetic, and beverage industries. Its primary use as a stimulant is well-known, but it also has applications in analgesics, respiratory treatments, and even cosmetic products.
Key Uses of Caffeine:
Central Nervous System Stimulant:
Caffeine is best known for its stimulatory effect on the central nervous system. It is used to increase alertness, focus, and energy levels. This makes caffeine a key ingredient in beverages like coffee, tea, and energy drinks.
Pain Relief:
Caffeine is often included in combination with analgesics such as aspirin or paracetamol in over-the-counter pain relief medications. It enhances the effectiveness of these drugs, especially in migraines and tension headaches.

Respiratory Disorders:
Caffeine is sometimes used in bronchodilators to treat asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), as it can relax the muscles of the airways and improve breathing.
Weight Loss:
Caffeine is included in many dietary supplements marketed for weight loss. It increases thermogenesis (heat production in the body) and fat oxidation, making it a common ingredient in fat-burning products.
Cosmetic Uses:
Caffeine is used in cosmetic formulations for skin care due to its anti-inflammatory and antioxidant properties. It is believed to reduce cellulite, improve blood circulation, and reduce puffiness and dark circles under the eyes.
It is also included in shampoos and hair care products, where it is thought to stimulate hair follicles and promote hair growth.
Athletic Performance:
Caffeine is a performance-enhancing substance that is used in sports supplements to increase endurance and strength. It is believed to work by stimulating the central nervous system, improving focus, and reducing the perception of effort during physical activity.
Pharmaceutical Use:
Apart from being used in pain relievers, caffeine is also found in medications designed for neonatal apnea, a condition where premature infants stop breathing for short periods.
Antioxidant Properties:
Caffeine is known for its antioxidant properties, which help in neutralizing free radicals in the body. This is another reason it is included in various anti-aging and skin-care products.

Taxol
Taxol, also known as paclitaxel, is a chemotherapeutic agent and a member of the taxane class of drugs, which are derived from the bark of the Pacific yew tree (Taxus brevifolia). It has been used extensively in the treatment of various cancers, including ovarian, breast, lung, and prostate cancer. Taxol works by stabilizing microtubules, thereby inhibiting cell division, and is widely recognized for its potent anticancer properties.

Industrial Production:
Taxol was originally isolated from the bark of the Pacific yew tree (Taxus brevifolia), but due to the limited availability of this natural source and concerns over environmental sustainability, industrial-scale production now relies on semi-synthetic methods, where taxol is synthesized from a precursor called 10-

deacetylbaccatin III. This compound is isolated from the needles of Taxus species, which grow more abundantly compared to the bark of the yew tree.
Key Steps in the Production of Taxol:
Harvesting and Extraction:
Taxol was initially extracted from the bark of the Pacific yew tree, but now taxol production largely utilizes the needles of yew trees like Taxus baccata or Taxus chinensis. The needles are collected and processed to extract the precursor 10-deacetylbaccatin III.
Synthesis of 10-deacetylbaccatin III:
The precursor compound, 10-deacetylbaccatin III, is extracted from the plant material. This compound is then chemically modified through a series of steps to produce paclitaxel (Taxol).
Semi-Synthetic Pathways:
Once 10-deacetylbaccatin III is isolated, it undergoes acetylation and other modifications to form paclitaxel. This process involves the use of chemical reagents and catalysts to attach the necessary side chains to create the active compound.
Purification:
The semi-synthetic paclitaxel is purified using techniques like chromatography, including high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), to ensure that it meets the required pharmaceutical grade.
Formulation:
Paclitaxel is formulated into injectable forms for intravenous (IV) administration, often in combination with cremophor EL (a solubilizer), as paclitaxel is poorly soluble in water.

Estimation:
The content of paclitaxel in both plant extracts and pharmaceutical formulations is quantified using analytical methods such as HPLC and mass spectrometry (MS). These techniques offer high sensitivity and selectivity for identifying and quantifying paclitaxel.

HPLC Conditions for Taxol Estimation:
Mobile Phase: A combination of acetonitrile and water, often with a slight addition of phosphoric acid or acetic acid for pH adjustment.
Column: C18 column (250 × 4.6 mm) is commonly used for paclitaxel analysis.
Detector: UV detector set at 227 nm, which corresponds to the maximum absorbance of paclitaxel.
Flow Rate: Typically 1.0 mL/min.
Injection Volume: Around 20 µL.
Run Time: Approximately 20-30 minutes.
Sample Preparation for Taxol Estimation:
Extract the plant material (e.g., yew tree needles) or pharmaceutical preparation (e.g., injectable paclitaxel).
Filter the sample through a 0.45 µm filter to remove any particulates.
Dilute the extract or formulation with a suitable solvent (e.g., methanol or acetonitrile).
Inject the sample into the HPLC system and analyze the paclitaxel content based on retention time and peak area.

Utilization:
Paclitaxel (Taxol) is used primarily in oncology for the treatment of various cancers. It functions by disrupting the microtubule dynamics during the cell cycle, preventing cell division and promoting apoptosis (programmed cell death).
Key Uses of Taxol:
Cancer Treatment:
Breast Cancer: Taxol is used in the treatment of metastatic breast cancer and as an adjuvant therapy in early-stage breast cancer.

Ovarian Cancer: It is one of the most effective treatments for advanced ovarian cancer.
Non-Small Cell Lung Cancer: Taxol is used in combination with other chemotherapy drugs for the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC).
Prostate Cancer: It has also been used in the treatment of advanced prostate cancer.
Kaposi's Sarcoma: Taxol is used in some cases of Kaposi's sarcoma, a cancer that can occur in HIV/AIDS patients.

Mechanism of Action:
Paclitaxel binds to microtubules, stabilizing them and preventing their depolymerization. This interference disrupts the mitotic spindle, preventing cell division and leading to cell death.
Its ability to inhibit mitosis makes it effective in targeting rapidly dividing cancer cells.
Combination Therapy:
Taxol is often used in combination with other chemotherapeutic agents like cisplatin or carboplatin to enhance its effectiveness and broaden its therapeutic activity across various types of cancer.
Pharmaceutical Formulations:
Paclitaxel is administered as an intravenous (IV) infusion, and its formulations often include a solubilizing agent (such as Cremophor EL) to overcome its poor solubility in water.
Challenges in Production and Utilization

Sustainability:
Early extraction of paclitaxel from the bark of the Pacific yew tree was environmentally unsustainable due to the slow growth of the tree and the need for large quantities of bark. This led to the development of semi-synthetic methods that use plant needles, which are more abundant and renewable.
Toxicity:
Paclitaxel, while effective, can have significant side effects, including bone marrow suppression, nausea, hair loss, and peripheral neuropathy. These side effects are associated with its cytotoxic effects on normal cells as well as cancer cells.
Solubility Issues:
Paclitaxel has poor aqueous solubility, which requires the use of solubilizing agents such as Cremophor EL, which can cause hypersensitivity reactions in some patients.

Vincristine
Vincristine is a chemotherapeutic agent belonging to the vinca alkaloid class, which is derived from the plant Catharanthus roseus (formerly known as Vinca rosea), commonly known as the periwinkle plant. Vincristine is used in the treatment of various types of cancers, including leukemia, Hodgkin's lymphoma, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, and solid tumors. It works by interfering with microtubule formation during cell division, ultimately leading to cell death.

Industrial Production:
Vincristine is primarily obtained from the roots and stems of Catharanthus roseus, although the process of obtaining vincristine from plant sources has limitations due to the low yields from natural sources. To overcome these challenges, semi-synthetic and biotechnological methods have been developed to produce vincristine more efficiently.
Key Steps in the Production of Vincristine:
Extraction from Catharanthus roseus:
Vincristine is traditionally extracted from the roots and stems of Catharanthus roseus. The plant contains alkaloids such as vinblastine, vincristine, and other related compounds. Extraction is typically done using solvents like ethanol, methanol, or chloroform.
Isolation and Purification:

The extraction is followed by the isolation of vincristine through techniques like chromatography (e.g., column chromatography), where different alkaloids can be separated and purified.
Semi-Synthetic Production:
Semi-synthetic methods involve the conversion of vinblastine, another alkaloid obtained from Catharanthus roseus, into vincristine. This process is achieved by chemical modification of the vinblastine molecule, typically involving acetylation and other modifications to the structure.
Cell Culture Methods:
In recent years, plant cell cultures have been used as an alternative method for the production of vincristine. This method involves growing Catharanthus roseus cells in bioreactors under controlled conditions to produce vincristine in large quantities. This biotechnological approach aims to increase yields and reduce the dependency on harvesting plants.
Purification:
After extraction or biotechnological production, vincristine is purified using high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) or other techniques to ensure the desired purity levels necessary for therapeutic use.

Estimation:
Vincristine content in plant extracts or pharmaceutical formulations is estimated using analytical techniques such as HPLC, UV-Vis spectroscopy, and mass spectrometry.
HPLC Conditions for Vincristine Estimation:
Mobile Phase: Typically a mixture of methanol and water, with slight acidification using phosphoric acid or acetic acid to optimize separation.
Column: C18 or Phenyl columns (250 × 4.6 mm) are commonly used for vincristine analysis.
Detector: UV detector at 235 nm to detect vincristine, as this is the optimal wavelength for its absorption.
Flow Rate: Generally set at 1.0 mL/min.
Injection Volume: Around 20 µL.
Run Time: Approximately 30 minutes, depending on the method used.
Sample Preparation for Vincristine Estimation:
Extract the alkaloids from Catharanthus roseus plant material or pharmaceutical formulations.
Filter the sample using a 0.45 µm filter to remove any particulate matter.
Dilute the extract with a suitable solvent (e.g., methanol, ethanol, or acetonitrile).
Inject the prepared sample into the HPLC system for analysis, and quantify vincristine based on the retention time and peak area.

Utilization:
Vincristine is primarily used in oncology for the treatment of various cancers. It is a part of chemotherapy regimens for diseases such as leukemia, lymphoma, and solid tumors.
Key Uses of Vincristine:
Cancer Treatment:
Leukemia: Vincristine is a key component in the treatment of acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), particularly in children.
Lymphoma: It is used in combination therapies for Hodgkin's lymphoma and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma.
Solid Tumors: Vincristine is also used in the treatment of solid tumors, including neuroblastoma and Wilms' tumor.
Breast Cancer: Vincristine can be used in some chemotherapy regimens for breast cancer.
Mechanism of Action:
Vincristine binds to tubulin and inhibits the formation of microtubules, which are essential for cell division. By disrupting mitosis, it prevents cancer cells from dividing and growing, leading to cell death.
Combination Therapy:

Vincristine is typically used as part of combination chemotherapy regimens, such as the CHOP regimen (cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisone) or the MOPP regimen (mechlorethamine, vincristine, procarbazine, and prednisone).
Administration:
Vincristine is administered via intravenous (IV) infusion. It is generally given in cycles, with each cycle lasting a few weeks to allow recovery of healthy cells.
Challenges in Production and Utilization
Low Yield from Natural Sources:
One of the major challenges with vincristine is that Catharanthus roseus yields very low quantities of the alkaloid. This makes large-scale production from plants inefficient, leading to the development of semi-synthetic and biotechnological methods for higher yields.
Toxicity:
Vincristine can have significant side effects, including neuropathy (nerve damage), bone marrow suppression, gastrointestinal issues (nausea, constipation), and alopecia (hair loss). Peripheral neuropathy is one of the most common and debilitating side effects.
Drug Resistance:
Like many other chemotherapeutic agents, vincristine is subject to drug resistance. This resistance may be mediated by the P-glycoprotein pump, which actively pumps vincristine out of cancer cells, reducing its efficacy.
Administration Issues:
Vincristine is typically administered intravenously, and it is important to monitor for potential complications, including extravasation, where the drug leaks into surrounding tissues, causing tissue damage.

Vinblastine
Vinblastine is a chemotherapeutic agent derived from the vinca alkaloid family, which is extracted from the plant Catharanthus roseus (commonly known as periwinkle). It is used primarily to treat various cancers, including Hodgkin's lymphoma, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, testicular cancer, and breast cancer. Like vincristine, vinblastine exerts its anti-cancer effects by inhibiting the formation of microtubules during cell division, which prevents mitosis and leads to cell death.

Industrial Production:
Vinblastine is typically obtained from the roots and stems of Catharanthus roseus. However, due to low yields from natural sources, more efficient methods of production, including semi-synthetic and biotechnological processes, have been developed.
Key Steps in the Production of Vinblastine:
Extraction from Catharanthus roseus:
The first step in producing vinblastine is extracting it from the roots and stems of Catharanthus roseus. The plant contains both vinblastine and vincristine, two related vinca alkaloids, which are extracted using organic solvents such as methanol, ethanol, or chloroform.
Isolation and Purification:
After extraction, vinblastine is isolated using techniques like column chromatography or high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC). Since vinca alkaloids like vinblastine are chemically similar, these separation techniques are critical to ensure purity.
Semi-Synthetic Production:
Semi-synthetic production involves converting vindoline, a compound found in Catharanthus roseus, into vinblastine through chemical modification. This modification typically involves processes like acetylation and oxidation, which enhance yield and allow for large-scale production.
Plant Cell Culture:

In some cases, plant cell cultures of Catharanthus roseus are used in bioreactors to produce vinblastine more efficiently. This method allows for the continuous production of vinblastine in a controlled environment, potentially overcoming limitations associated with plant harvest and seasonality.
Purification:
Once vinblastine is produced through extraction or biotechnological methods, it undergoes further purification through HPLC or other chromatography techniques to meet the required quality standards for pharmaceutical use.

Estimation:
The content of vinblastine in plant extracts or pharmaceutical formulations can be determined using various analytical techniques, with HPLC being the most commonly used method for its estimation.
HPLC Conditions for Vinblastine Estimation:
Mobile Phase: A mixture of methanol, water, and phosphoric acid is typically used to optimize separation.
Column: C18 columns (250 × 4.6 mm) are commonly employed for vinblastine analysis.
Detector: UV-Vis detector set at a wavelength of 235 nm to detect vinblastine.
Flow Rate: Around 1.0 mL/min.
Injection Volume: Typically 20 µL.
Retention Time: Around 20-30 minutes, depending on the method used.
Sample Preparation for Vinblastine Estimation:
Extraction: Extract the alkaloids from Catharanthus roseus using suitable solvents.
Filtration: Filter the extract using a 0.45 µm filter to remove particulate matter.
Dilution: Dilute the extract with methanol or ethanol.
Injection: Inject the prepared sample into the HPLC system for analysis and quantify vinblastine based on retention time and peak area.

Utilization:
Vinblastine is primarily used as a chemotherapeutic agent in the treatment of various cancers.
Key Uses of Vinblastine:
Cancer Treatment:
Hodgkin's lymphoma: Vinblastine is often used in combination with other drugs for the treatment of Hodgkin's lymphoma.
Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: Vinblastine is included in some chemotherapy regimens for non-Hodgkin's lymphoma.
Testicular Cancer: Vinblastine is used in the treatment of testicular cancer, often in combination with other drugs such as bleomycin and cisplatin (the BEP regimen).
Breast Cancer: It is also used in some chemotherapy regimens for breast cancer.
Mechanism of Action:
Vinblastine works by binding to tubulin, a protein involved in forming microtubules, which are essential for cell division. By disrupting microtubule formation, vinblastine inhibits the ability of cells to divide, leading to cell cycle arrest in the M-phase and ultimately causing cell death.
Combination Chemotherapy:
Vinblastine is usually administered as part of combination chemotherapy regimens, where it is used alongside other chemotherapeutic agents to enhance efficacy. Examples include the MOPP regimen (mechlorethamine, vinblastine, procarbazine, and prednisone) for Hodgkin's lymphoma and the BEP regimen (bleomycin, etoposide, and cisplatin) for testicular cancer.
Administration:
Vinblastine is administered intravenously. It is typically given in cycles with rest periods to allow recovery of healthy cells. The dosage and frequency of administration are adjusted based on the type of cancer being treated and the patient's condition.

Challenges in Production and Utilization

Low Yield from Natural Sources:

Like vincristine, vinblastine is produced in small quantities by Catharanthus roseus, which makes large-scale production expensive. This limitation has led to the development of semi-synthetic and biotechnological methods to enhance yield.

Side Effects:

Vinblastine can cause severe side effects, including bone marrow suppression, nausea, vomiting, hair loss, constipation, and peripheral neuropathy. These side effects can limit its use, particularly in combination with other chemotherapeutic agents.

Toxicity:

One of the major challenges in the clinical use of vinblastine is its toxicity to normal cells, especially those in the bone marrow, which can lead to myelosuppression. This can result in a reduced ability of the body to produce red blood cells, white blood cells, and platelets, causing anemia, infection risk, and bleeding.

Drug Resistance:

Like many chemotherapy drugs, vinblastine is susceptible to drug resistance. Cancer cells can develop mechanisms to pump out vinblastine using the P-glycoprotein pump, which can reduce its efficacy over time.

Administration Issues:

Vinblastine is often administered intravenously and requires careful monitoring for extravasation, where the drug leaks into the surrounding tissue, potentially causing severe tissue damage.

UNIT-V

Chapter :16

Basics of Phytochemistry

Modern methods of extraction, application of latest techniques like Spectroscopy, chromatography and electrophoresis in the isolation, purification and identification of crude drugs

Extraction

Extraction is a crucial process in the isolation of active compounds from natural sources such as plants, animals, and microorganisms. The goal is to selectively extract the desired bioactive compounds while minimizing the co-extraction of unwanted materials. The extraction method chosen depends on various factors including the nature of the compound, the matrix from which it is extracted, and the desired purity and yield.

Principles of Extraction

Extraction is based on the principle of selectively separating soluble compounds from a solid matrix (e.g., plant or animal tissue) using a solvent. This process relies on the difference in solubility between the compounds of interest and the matrix. The solvent chosen dissolves the active compounds, while the insoluble materials (such as cellulose, lignin, and proteins) remain in the solid phase. The extracted solution is then processed further to isolate the desired compound(s).

There are several methods of extraction, each with distinct principles:

Maceration: The plant material is soaked in a solvent to dissolve soluble components at room temperature or with slight heating. This method is simple but slow and is best suited for delicate compounds.

Percolation: Solvent is passed through the plant material under gravity to extract soluble components continuously. This method is efficient and faster than maceration.

Soxhlet Extraction: This method involves the continuous cycling of solvent through the plant material, ensuring efficient extraction. It is particularly effective for extracting lipophilic compounds such as essential oils and fats.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction: This uses supercritical fluids (e.g., CO2) as solvents to extract bioactive compounds under high pressure and temperature. It is efficient for extracting volatile and thermolabile compounds.

Ultrasonic-Assisted Extraction: Ultrasound waves increase the rate of extraction by causing cavitation (formation of bubbles), enhancing the penetration of the solvent into the plant material.

Each extraction method is chosen based on the nature of the compounds being extracted, the properties of the plant material, and the desired outcome.

Choice of Solvents

The choice of solvent is critical in determining the efficiency and selectivity of the extraction process. A solvent must be able to dissolve the target compound(s) effectively while being non-toxic and easily removable (if necessary). The following factors are considered when choosing an extraction solvent:

Polarity of the Solvent: Solvents vary in polarity, ranging from non-polar (e.g., hexane) to polar (e.g., water, ethanol). The polarity of the solvent should match the polarity of the compounds to be extracted. Non-polar solvents are best for extracting lipophilic compounds like essential oils, while polar solvents are more effective for hydrophilic compounds like alkaloids and flavonoids.
Non-polar solvents: Hexane, chloroform, ether, and benzene are suitable for extracting non-polar compounds such as fats, oils, and terpenoids.
Polar solvents: Water, ethanol, methanol, and acetone are often used for extracting polar compounds like glycosides, alkaloids, and phenolic compounds.
Boiling Point of the Solvent: The boiling point of the solvent should be chosen based on the desired temperature for extraction. A higher boiling point solvent is useful for heat-sensitive compounds, while a lower boiling point solvent is useful for compounds that are sensitive to heat degradation.
Solubility and Miscibility: The solvent should effectively dissolve the desired compounds at the extraction temperature. Additionally, the solvent should be miscible with other solvents if multiple solvent extractions are required.
Safety and Toxicity: The solvent should be safe to handle, non-toxic, and should not leave harmful residues in the final extract. Water and ethanol are commonly used as safe solvents, while others like chloroform and ether require careful handling.
Selectivity: Some solvents selectively dissolve certain classes of compounds, so choosing the right solvent ensures that only the desired bioactive compounds are extracted, while minimizing the co-extraction of unwanted substances.

Factors Affecting the Choice of an Extraction Process
Several factors influence the choice of the extraction method, including the properties of the sample, the compounds of interest, and the intended application of the extract. These factors must be carefully considered to ensure the extraction process is efficient, cost-effective, and suitable for the desired compound isolation.
Nature of the Plant or Animal Material

Matrix Composition: The plant or animal tissue's composition (e.g., cellulose, lignin, fats) affects the extraction method. For example, fibrous plants may require pre-treatment to break down the cell wall before efficient extraction.
Size and Texture: The size and texture of the raw material influence the extraction rate. Smaller particles or powdered forms of plant material have a larger surface area, enhancing solvent contact and extraction efficiency.

Target Compound Characteristics
Polarity of the Compound: The solubility of the compound determines the choice of solvent. Polar compounds require polar solvents, and non-polar compounds require non-polar solvents.
Thermal Stability: Heat-sensitive compounds, such as essential oils and vitamins, should be extracted using methods that minimize temperature exposure (e.g., cold extraction or supercritical fluid extraction).
Volatility: Volatile compounds, such as essential oils, may require gentle extraction techniques like steam distillation or cold pressing to prevent evaporation during the extraction process.

Extraction Time and Yield
Time Constraints: Some extraction methods, like Soxhlet extraction or supercritical fluid extraction, may take longer but yield higher purity extracts. Other methods, like maceration or percolation, may be faster but less efficient.
Yield Efficiency: The yield of the desired compound is influenced by the solvent, temperature, and time of extraction. Methods like Soxhlet extraction and supercritical fluid extraction are often more efficient in terms of yield, but require specialized equipment.

Cost and Scalability

Economic Feasibility: The cost of the extraction process should be considered, especially for large-scale production. Methods like Soxhlet extraction, which require large amounts of solvent, may be less cost-effective compared to more modern methods like microwave-assisted extraction or supercritical fluid extraction.

Scale of Operation: The extraction method should be scalable from laboratory to industrial levels. For large-scale production, methods like percolation and supercritical fluid extraction may be more suitable, whereas for small-scale or pilot-scale extractions, methods like maceration or ultrasonic extraction may be preferred.

Environmental and Regulatory Considerations

Environmental Impact: The environmental impact of the extraction process should be evaluated, especially the disposal of solvents and waste by-products. Green extraction methods, such as using water as a solvent or supercritical fluid extraction, are becoming more popular for their lower environmental impact.

Regulatory Compliance: Depending on the end use of the extract (e.g., for pharmaceuticals or food products), the extraction process must comply with regulatory standards to ensure safety, purity, and quality.

Infusion and Decoction

Principle:

Both infusion and decoction are traditional methods of extracting bioactive compounds from plant material using water as a solvent. The primary difference lies in the method of heating and the duration of extraction.

Process:

Infusion: Plant material is steeped in hot water for a few minutes to extract water-soluble compounds, typically used for delicate parts like leaves and flowers.

Decoction: The plant material is boiled for an extended period, typically 15-30 minutes, to extract compounds, especially from tougher materials like roots, barks, and seeds.

Advantages:

Simple and inexpensive.

Safe for the extraction of water-soluble compounds.

Disadvantages:

Limited to water-soluble compounds.

Long extraction time for decoction, especially for tough materials.

Applications:

Used in the preparation of herbal teas, infusions, and medicinal decoctions. Common for extracting compounds like tannins, flavonoids, and glycosides.

Maceration

Principle:

Maceration is a simple and traditional extraction technique where the plant material is soaked in a solvent for an extended period. During this process, the solvent penetrates the plant cells and dissolves the active compounds into the liquid.

Process:

Plant material is finely chopped or ground and placed in a container.

A solvent (e.g., water, ethanol, methanol) is added to the container.

The mixture is allowed to stand for a certain period, typically 24-48 hours, and occasionally stirred.
After extraction, the mixture is filtered to remove the solid residues, leaving the extract behind.

Advantages:
Simple and cost-effective.
Does not require specialized equipment.
Suitable for small-scale extractions.

Disadvantages:
Extraction process is slow and can take several days.
Efficiency can be low compared to other methods.
Limited control over temperature, which could degrade thermolabile compounds.

Applications:
Used for the extraction of essential oils, alkaloids, flavonoids, and tannins from plants. Commonly used in the preparation of tinctures and liquid herbal extracts.

Digestion
Principle:
Digestion is a method similar to maceration, but the plant material is gently heated, often in a water bath, to speed up the extraction process. The heat increases the solvent's ability to dissolve the active compounds, improving the extraction efficiency.

Process:
The plant material is placed in a container, and a solvent is added.
The mixture is heated gently, typically in a water or oil bath, for a certain period (usually several hours).
After digestion, the mixture is filtered to separate the liquid extract from the plant residue.

Advantages:
Faster than maceration due to the application of heat.
More efficient than simple maceration.

Disadvantages:
Requires temperature control to avoid overheating and degradation of heat-sensitive compounds.
Risk of losing volatile compounds due to heating.

Applications:
Used for the extraction of compounds like alkaloids, essential oils, and terpenoids, especially when heat is not excessively damaging to the compounds of interest.

Percolation
Principle:
Percolation involves the continuous passage of a solvent through plant material, which enhances the extraction of active compounds. This process is more efficient than maceration because the solvent is refreshed continuously, extracting compounds more effectively.

Process:
Plant material is placed in a vertical container (a percolator).
A solvent is poured into the top, and it percolates (filters) down through the plant material.

The solvent extracts the compounds as it moves through the plant material, and the solution is collected at the bottom.
This process is repeated until the desired concentration of the active compounds is achieved.

Advantages:
Efficient extraction method, especially for extracting polar compounds.
Relatively simple to execute and scale up
.
Disadvantages:
Slow process, as it takes time for the solvent to pass through the plant material.
Requires a large amount of solvent compared to other methods.

Applications:
Used for preparing herbal tinctures and liquid extracts, particularly in the pharmaceutical and herbal industries.

Continuous Hot Extraction (Soxhlet Extraction)
Principle:
Soxhlet extraction is a continuous hot extraction method where a solvent is repeatedly distilled and condensed to extract bioactive compounds from plant material. It is highly effective for extracting lipophilic compounds, such as oils and fats.

Process:
1. The plant material is placed in a thimble inside a Soxhlet apparatus.
2. A solvent (typically ethanol, hexane, or petroleum ether) is heated in the bottom flask and vaporized.
3. The vapor condenses and drips over the plant material, dissolving the bioactive compounds.
4. The liquid phase containing the extract is then siphoned back into the flask for further extraction, repeating the process until the desired extraction is achieved.

Advantages:
High extraction efficiency, especially for non-polar compounds.
Suitable for large-scale extractions.

Disadvantages:
Requires a long extraction time (often several hours).
High solvent consumption.
Heat-sensitive compounds may degrade due to prolonged exposure to high temperatures.
Applications:
Widely used for extracting oils, fats, and other lipophilic compounds from plant materials.

Supercritical Fluid Extraction (SFE)
Principle:
SFE uses supercritical fluids (typically carbon dioxide) to extract bioactive compounds. A supercritical fluid has unique properties, behaving like both a gas and a liquid, allowing it to penetrate plant material and dissolve a wide range of compounds.

Process:
Plant material is placed in a high-pressure extraction vessel.
Carbon dioxide or another gas is compressed to a supercritical state.

The supercritical fluid is passed through the plant material, extracting the compounds.
The fluid is then decompressed, and the extracted compounds are separated from the fluid.

Advantages:

Environmentally friendly, especially with CO_2 as the solvent.
Selective and efficient extraction.
Suitable for thermolabile compounds, as no high temperatures are required.

Disadvantages:

Requires specialized, expensive equipment.
Limited to non-polar and moderately polar compounds.

Applications:

Used in the extraction of essential oils, terpenes, fatty acids, and other volatile compounds.

Counter Current Extraction

Principle:

Counter current extraction is a technique where the solvent and the plant material flow in opposite directions, increasing the contact time between the solvent and plant material, leading to efficient extraction.

Process:

Plant material and solvent are passed through a system in opposite directions.
The solvent extracts compounds from the plant material as they flow through it.
The solvent is continuously refreshed while extracting the desired compounds, ensuring a high yield.

Advantages:

High extraction efficiency.
Reduced solvent usage compared to traditional extraction methods.
Scalable for industrial applications.

Disadvantages:

Requires specialized equipment.
Can be time-consuming depending on the system setup.

Applications:

Used for large-scale extraction processes in the pharmaceutical, food, and fragrance industries.

Microwave Assisted Extraction (MAE)

Principle:

Microwave-assisted extraction uses microwave radiation to heat the solvent and plant material quickly. The microwaves cause rapid molecular movement, creating localized heating that helps release bioactive compounds from plant tissues.

Process:

Plant material and solvent are placed in a microwave-assisted extraction vessel.
Microwaves are applied, causing the solvent to heat rapidly and extract the compounds.
The extract is separated from the plant material, and the solvent is removed, leaving the active compounds behind.

Advantages:

Rapid extraction with high efficiency.
Reduced energy consumption compared to traditional heating methods.

Selective extraction of bioactive compounds.

Disadvantages:
Requires specialized microwave equipment.
Some compounds may degrade if the process is not optimized.

Applications:
Used for the extraction of phenolics, flavonoids, essential oils, and alkaloids.

Ultrasonic Assisted Extraction (UAE)

Principle:
Ultrasonic-assisted extraction uses high-frequency sound waves (ultrasound) to create cavitation bubbles in the solvent. These bubbles collapse with force, generating shear forces that break the plant cell walls and release bioactive compounds.

Process:
Plant material and solvent are placed in an ultrasonic bath or chamber.
Ultrasound waves are applied, causing cavitation and breaking the plant cells.
The extract is filtered to remove solid residues and obtain the final extract.

Advantages:
Fast extraction time.
Increased yield compared to traditional methods.
Low solvent consumption.

Disadvantages:
Requires specialized equipment.
The process can be less effective for very large plant samples.

Applications:
Used for extracting flavonoids, alkaloids, polyphenols, and essential oils.

Each extraction method, whether conventional or modern, has its advantages and limitations, and the choice of method depends on factors such as the type of bioactive compound, scale of extraction, time, and cost considerations. Conventional methods like maceration and Soxhlet extraction are still widely used due to their simplicity and cost-effectiveness, while modern methods like supercritical fluid extraction, microwave-assisted extraction, and ultrasonic-assisted extraction offer higher efficiency, faster processing, and better selectivity, making them ideal for large-scale and high-quality extractions.

Applications of Spectroscopy in the Isolation, Purification, and Identification of Crude Drugs

Spectroscopy has become a fundamental tool in the isolation, purification, and identification of bioactive compounds from crude drugs. The application of spectroscopic techniques helps in understanding the chemical structure, molecular composition, and functional groups of compounds present in plant materials, allowing for more accurate and efficient analysis. Below are detailed descriptions of how various spectroscopic techniques are applied in the study of crude drugs.

Ultraviolet-Visible (UV-Vis) Spectroscopy

Principle:
UV-Vis spectroscopy measures the absorption of ultraviolet and visible light by a substance. The absorption is due to electronic transitions in molecules, particularly related to conjugated double bonds or aromatic rings.

Applications:
Identification of Active Compounds: Many plant compounds, such as flavonoids, alkaloids, and tannins, exhibit characteristic absorption spectra in the UV-Vis range. By comparing the absorption pattern with known standards, the presence of specific bioactive compounds can be confirmed.
Quantification of Active Ingredients: UV-Vis spectroscopy is widely used to quantify active components like anthraquinones, flavonoids, and phenolic compounds in plant extracts.
Monitoring Purity: During the purification of crude drugs, UV-Vis can be employed to monitor the elution profiles of compounds in chromatography, helping identify and isolate pure compounds based on their absorption maxima.

Advantages:
Rapid and non-destructive.
Simple and cost-effective.
Disadvantages:
Limited to compounds that absorb UV or visible light, and may not be applicable to all types of bioactive compounds.

Infrared (IR) Spectroscopy
Principle:
IR spectroscopy involves measuring the absorption of infrared radiation by molecules, which causes vibrational transitions in the chemical bonds. Different functional groups in organic compounds absorb specific wavelengths of IR radiation, providing a "fingerprint" of their molecular structure.

Applications:
Functional Group Identification: IR spectroscopy is crucial for identifying functional groups such as hydroxyl (-OH), carbonyl (C=O), and amine (-NH2) groups in crude drugs. This is essential in determining the chemical composition of a crude extract.
Purity Testing: IR spectra can be used to assess the purity of isolated compounds. A comparison of the spectra of the crude drug extract with that of the pure compound reveals if any impurities are present.
Characterization of Crude Extracts: IR spectra can be employed to distinguish between different chemical classes, such as alkaloids, flavonoids, and terpenoids, based on their characteristic absorption bands.
Monitoring Reactions: During the extraction or synthesis of bioactive compounds, IR can be used to monitor the formation of desired products or by-products, ensuring the reaction progresses correctly.

Advantages:
Simple, fast, and relatively inexpensive.
Non-destructive technique.
Provides information about functional groups and molecular interactions.
Disadvantages:
Limited in providing detailed structural information (e.g., stereochemistry or molecular weight).

Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR) Spectroscopy
Principle:
NMR spectroscopy is a powerful technique used to determine the molecular structure of organic compounds. It measures the interaction of nuclei (typically hydrogen or carbon) with a magnetic field, providing detailed information about the arrangement of atoms in a molecule.

Applications:
Structural Elucidation: NMR is one of the most effective techniques for determining the complete structure of unknown compounds, including the number and types of atoms (e.g., hydrogens, carbons) and their connectivity.
Quantification of Compounds: NMR can be used to quantify compounds in complex mixtures, especially when the molecular structure is known.
Purification Monitoring: NMR helps in monitoring the progress of purification processes by identifying the presence or absence of specific peaks corresponding to impurities or target compounds.
Confirmation of Isolation: After extracting and purifying bioactive compounds from crude drugs, NMR spectra confirm their identity by matching known chemical shifts with those of the isolated substance.

Advantages:
Provides detailed and comprehensive structural information.
Non-destructive, allowing for sample reuse.
Disadvantages:
Expensive and requires sophisticated equipment.
Time-consuming and requires expertise for interpretation.

Mass Spectrometry (MS)
Principle:
Mass spectrometry involves ionizing molecules and measuring the mass-to-charge ratio (m/z) of the ions formed. The resulting mass spectrum provides information about the molecular weight and structure of compounds.

Applications:
Molecular Weight Determination: MS is widely used to determine the molecular weight of compounds, which is essential for identifying and characterizing new compounds from crude drugs.
Structural Identification: By analyzing the fragmentation patterns in the mass spectrum, MS can provide insight into the structural characteristics of compounds, especially when combined with other techniques like NMR.
Purification and Quantification: MS can be used alongside chromatographic methods like HPLC or GC to separate and quantify bioactive compounds. The spectra can be compared with known standards to confirm the identity of compounds.
Identification of Unknown Compounds: MS is particularly useful for identifying new or unknown compounds from complex mixtures, making it an essential tool in the discovery of novel bioactive compounds from natural sources.

Advantages:
Highly sensitive and accurate.
Provides molecular weight and structural information.
Disadvantages:
Expensive and requires skilled operators.
Requires sample ionization, which can be problematic for thermally unstable or non-volatile compounds.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) with UV/Vis Detection
Principle:
HPLC is a chromatographic technique used to separate, identify, and quantify compounds in a mixture based on their interaction with a stationary phase and a mobile phase. UV/Vis detection is used in conjunction with HPLC to identify compounds that absorb UV or visible light.

Applications:
Separation and Purification: HPLC is commonly used to separate complex mixtures of compounds in crude drug extracts. It allows for the isolation of individual compounds, which can then be further analyzed using spectroscopic techniques like UV-Vis or MS.
Quantification of Active Compounds: By integrating the area under the peak in the chromatogram, HPLC can be used to quantify bioactive components like alkaloids, flavonoids, and glycosides in crude drug extracts.
Purity Assessment: The resolution of peaks in HPLC is used to assess the purity of isolated compounds. Pure compounds will show a single, sharp peak, while impurities lead to broad or additional peaks.
Identification of Compounds: Compounds are identified based on their retention times and UV absorption spectra. The retention time can be compared with standards, and the UV spectra can provide additional information about the compound's identity.

Advantages:
High resolution and separation capacity.
Can be used to identify and quantify compounds simultaneously.
Disadvantages:
Requires a large amount of solvent and time-consuming calibration.
Expensive and requires specialized knowledge.

Fluorescence Spectroscopy
Principle:
Fluorescence spectroscopy involves the measurement of emitted light from a sample after it has absorbed light. Many compounds, including alkaloids and flavonoids, exhibit fluorescence properties.
Applications:
Sensitivity in Detection: Fluorescence spectroscopy is highly sensitive and can detect compounds at very low concentrations, making it ideal for the detection of trace components in crude drug extracts.
Analysis of Specific Compounds: Some compounds naturally fluoresce, and their fluorescence spectra can be used to identify them without the need for complex sample preparation.
Purity and Quality Control: Fluorescence spectra can be used to assess the purity of isolated compounds by observing shifts in the emission peaks, indicating the presence of contaminants.

Advantages:
Highly sensitive with low detection limits.
Non-destructive.
Disadvantages:
Requires specific compounds that can fluoresce.
Can be influenced by environmental factors like temperature and pH.
Spectroscopic techniques such as UV-Vis spectroscopy, IR spectroscopy, NMR, Mass Spectrometry (MS), HPLC, and Fluorescence Spectroscopy have revolutionized the process of isolating, purifying, and identifying bioactive compounds from crude drugs. These methods not only enable a deeper understanding of the chemical composition of plant materials but also assist in the purification, quantification, and verification of active constituents. The combination of these techniques, often in tandem with chromatographic methods, ensures high accuracy and efficiency in drug discovery, making them indispensable tools in pharmacognosy and natural product chemistry.

Applications of Chromatography in the Isolation, Purification, and Identification of Crude Drugs
Chromatography is an essential analytical technique widely used for the separation, identification, and purification of bioactive compounds from crude drug extracts. It exploits differences in the physical and

chemical properties of compounds, such as polarity, size, and charge, to achieve separation. The various chromatography techniques allow for detailed analysis of complex mixtures, which is particularly important in pharmacognosy for identifying active principles, detecting impurities, and ensuring the quality and purity of herbal medicines.

Here, we discuss the applications of different chromatographic techniques in the context of crude drug analysis:

Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC)

Principle:

TLC is a simple and widely used chromatographic technique that involves the separation of compounds based on their differential affinities to a stationary phase (usually a thin layer of silica gel) and a mobile phase (solvent or solvent mixture).

Applications:

Qualitative Identification: TLC is used to determine the presence of specific compounds in crude extracts. Compounds are visualized by UV light or by using specific reagents that react with the compounds.

Purity Assessment: TLC helps assess the purity of isolated compounds. A pure compound will produce a single spot, whereas a mixture will show multiple spots.

Monitoring Extraction Process: TLC can be used during the extraction and purification steps to monitor the presence of target compounds and identify impurities, helping guide the extraction process.

Comparative Studies: TLC is also useful for comparing the chemical profiles of different plant species or different extracts of the same plant to assess variation in composition.

Advantages:

Quick and simple technique.

Low cost and minimal sample requirement.

Provides qualitative and semi-quantitative data.

Disadvantages:

Limited resolution for complex mixtures.

Not suitable for very large-scale purification.

High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC)

Principle:

HPLC is a sophisticated technique where compounds in a mixture are separated under high pressure using a liquid mobile phase and a solid stationary phase, typically packed in a column. The separation is based on differences in polarity, size, and interactions with the stationary phase.

Applications:

Separation of Bioactive Compounds: HPLC is highly effective for separating complex mixtures of compounds, such as alkaloids, flavonoids, terpenoids, and glycosides, from crude drug extracts. It is widely used for isolating active ingredients from plants.

Quantification of Active Compounds: With UV/Vis detection, HPLC can be used to quantify bioactive compounds in crude drug extracts, such as determining the concentration of flavonoids, alkaloids, or essential oils.

Purity Testing: After isolation, HPLC is often employed to confirm the purity of the compounds by comparing the chromatographic profile of the sample to that of a standard.

Identification of Compounds: HPLC is frequently used for the identification of plant metabolites based on retention times and by matching these to known standards. Coupling HPLC with mass spectrometry (HPLC-MS) further enhances its identification capabilities by providing structural information.

Fingerprinting of Crude Drugs: HPLC can create chemical fingerprints for the quality control of herbal medicines, ensuring batch-to-batch consistency.

Advantages:
High resolution and precision.
Suitable for both qualitative and quantitative analysis.
Can analyze very complex mixtures.
Disadvantages:
Expensive equipment and operational costs.
Requires skilled operators.

Gas Chromatography (GC)
Principle:
GC is used to separate volatile compounds based on their differential partitioning between a gaseous mobile phase and a liquid or solid stationary phase. The sample is vaporized, and the components are separated as they move through the column.

Applications:
Separation of Volatile Compounds: GC is particularly useful for the analysis of volatile compounds such as essential oils, terpenes, and fatty acids from plant materials. It is widely used for profiling the volatile components of crude drug extracts.
Identification of Constituents: GC coupled with mass spectrometry (GC-MS) is used to identify individual constituents in complex plant extracts by providing molecular weight and fragmentation pattern information.
Purity and Content Analysis: GC is used to evaluate the purity of essential oils or other volatile extracts by identifying any contaminants or degradation products.
Monitoring Distillation Processes: GC helps in monitoring the distillation and extraction processes of essential oils, ensuring that the desired compounds are being efficiently isolated.

Advantages:
High sensitivity and resolution.
Ideal for volatile and semi-volatile compounds.
Can be coupled with MS for structural elucidation.
Disadvantages:
Limited to volatile compounds, so not suitable for non-volatile or thermally labile substances.
Requires complex sample preparation.

Supercritical Fluid Chromatography (SFC)
Principle:
SFC is a chromatographic technique that uses supercritical fluids (typically CO_2) as the mobile phase. Supercritical fluids have properties of both liquids and gases, making them an excellent medium for separating non-volatile and polar compounds from crude drug extracts.

Applications:
Separation of Non-Volatile Compounds: SFC is often used to separate compounds that are too large or non-volatile for GC, such as sterols, lipids, and terpenoids.
Purification of Bioactive Compounds: SFC is effective in isolating bioactive compounds from complex plant extracts, especially when traditional solvents are ineffective or when purity is critical.
Green Chromatography: Since CO_2 is non-toxic and can be used as a solvent, SFC is considered a "green" technique, making it more environmentally friendly than organic solvent-based techniques.

Advantages:
High resolution with shorter analysis times compared to HPLC.
Suitable for thermally labile and non-volatile compounds.
Uses non-toxic solvents, making it environmentally friendly.
Disadvantages:
Requires specialized equipment and is expensive.
Sample preparation can be challenging.

Flash Chromatography
Principle:
Flash chromatography is a rapid chromatographic separation method that uses high-pressure mobile phases to force the solvent through a packed column. It is similar to traditional column chromatography but uses pressurized solvents to speed up the separation process.

Applications:
Fast Purification of Compounds: Flash chromatography is commonly used for the quick purification of bioactive compounds from plant extracts, especially when large quantities need to be processed.
Isolation of Plant Secondary Metabolites: This technique is ideal for separating and isolating alkaloids, flavonoids, and other secondary metabolites from plant extracts.
Purity Enhancement: It allows the removal of impurities or unwanted compounds from crude extracts, providing purified active ingredients for further analysis or formulation.

Advantages:
Rapid separation, reducing purification time.
Relatively simple and cost-effective compared to HPLC.
Suitable for large-scale separations.
Disadvantages:
Lower resolution compared to HPLC.
Not suitable for very complex mixtures.

Ion-Exchange Chromatography
Principle:
Ion-exchange chromatography separates compounds based on their ionic properties. The stationary phase is made up of charged particles that attract and hold ions of the opposite charge, allowing them to be separated by their affinity for the stationary phase.

Applications:
Separation of Charged Compounds: Ion-exchange chromatography is particularly useful for separating charged compounds like alkaloids, proteins, and amino acids from plant extracts.
Purification of Glycosides and Alkaloids: Many plant glycosides and alkaloids can be efficiently isolated using ion-exchange chromatography due to their ionic nature.
Water-Soluble Compounds: This technique is suitable for separating water-soluble components from plant extracts.

Advantages:
High selectivity for charged compounds.
Efficient for separating complex mixtures of ions.
Disadvantages:
Limited to compounds that carry a charge.

Can be more complex than other chromatographic methods.
Chromatography techniques such as Thin Layer Chromatography (TLC), High-Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC), Gas Chromatography (GC), Supercritical Fluid Chromatography (SFC), Flash Chromatography, and Ion-Exchange Chromatography play crucial roles in the isolation, purification, and identification of bioactive compounds from crude drug extracts. These techniques allow researchers to separate complex mixtures, quantify active ingredients, and confirm the purity and identity of isolated compounds. The continuous development of chromatography methods, such as the integration with mass spectrometry or other detectors, further enhances their capabilities, enabling the discovery of new natural products and improving the quality control of herbal medicines.

Application of Electrophoresis in the Isolation, Purification, and Identification of Crude Drugs
Electrophoresis is a powerful analytical technique used to separate molecules, such as proteins, nucleic acids, and other charged biomolecules, based on their size and charge. It involves the movement of charged molecules in an electric field, where they migrate at different rates depending on their characteristics. In the context of crude drug analysis, electrophoresis plays a significant role in the isolation, purification, and identification of bioactive compounds, particularly when dealing with complex mixtures.

Types of Electrophoresis
Agarose Gel Electrophoresis (AGE): Primarily used for separating nucleic acids (DNA, RNA) based on size.
Polyacrylamide Gel Electrophoresis (PAGE): Used for separating proteins based on both size and charge.
Isoelectric Focusing (IEF): Separates proteins or peptides based on their isoelectric point (pI), where the net charge of a molecule is zero.
Capillary Electrophoresis (CE): A modern technique that uses a narrow capillary column for the separation of ions, peptides, and small molecules.
Two-Dimensional Electrophoresis (2-DE): A combination of IEF and PAGE that separates proteins based on both their charge and molecular weight.

Applications in Crude Drug Isolation, Purification, and Identification
Separation of Proteins and Peptides
Proteins and peptides are among the most biologically relevant compounds in crude drugs, especially for medicinal plants with therapeutic proteins, enzymes, and antimicrobial peptides. Electrophoresis techniques like PAGE and 2-DE are commonly used to separate proteins based on their molecular weight and charge.

Applications:
Protein Profiling: Proteins present in crude plant extracts can be separated by PAGE, providing a fingerprint of the protein profile. This is crucial for identifying specific bioactive proteins in medicinal plants.
Purification of Therapeutic Proteins: Proteins that have pharmacological properties, such as enzymes with antioxidant activity or antimicrobial proteins, can be isolated and purified using electrophoresis techniques. For example, Isoelectric Focusing helps separate proteins based on their pI, facilitating the isolation of specific protein forms from complex mixtures.
Identification of Novel Proteins: By comparing the protein bands obtained from crude extracts with known protein databases, new proteins with potential therapeutic effects can be identified. This is especially important in identifying previously uncharacterized bioactive proteins from plant sources.

Separation of Alkaloids and Other Small Molecules
Alkaloids and other small molecular compounds are important bioactive components found in many crude drug extracts. While electrophoresis is not typically used for non-charged small molecules, specialized methods like Capillary Electrophoresis (CE) can be employed to separate charged small molecules based on their mobility in an electric field.

Applications:

Alkaloid Identification: Alkaloids are often separated using Capillary Electrophoresis, where they are distinguished by their electrophoretic mobility. This technique is especially useful for isolating alkaloids from complex mixtures, as they are often present in small quantities.

Purification of Small Molecules: CE can be used to purify small bioactive compounds, such as flavonoids, phenolic acids, and terpenoids, which can be challenging to isolate with traditional techniques.

Nucleic Acid Analysis

Crude drugs often contain nucleic acids, either in the form of genomic DNA or RNA, especially from plant sources. Electrophoresis techniques like Agarose Gel Electrophoresis (AGE) and Capillary Electrophoresis are widely used to analyze, purify, and identify nucleic acids.

Applications:

DNA Fingerprinting: For quality control of herbal drugs, DNA fingerprinting is crucial to authenticate the plant species used in crude drug formulations. AGE is used to separate plant DNA fragments based on size, and the resulting pattern serves as a unique molecular signature for plant identification.

RNA Analysis: Electrophoresis is also employed to analyze RNA profiles in crude plant extracts, which helps in the identification of plant varieties with desired therapeutic properties.

Molecular Authentication: Electrophoresis techniques can help distinguish between plant species or cultivars by comparing their DNA or RNA profiles. This ensures the authenticity of the plant material used in herbal medicines, preventing the use of adulterated or misidentified plant species.

Purity and Quality Control

Electrophoresis provides a method to assess the purity of isolated compounds in crude drug extracts. By separating and visualizing the individual components, electrophoresis allows researchers to detect contaminants or impurities that might affect the efficacy or safety of the drug.

Applications:

Purity Analysis of Extracts: Electrophoresis techniques like PAGE or Isoelectric Focusing can be used to determine the purity of crude drug extracts by comparing the electrophoretic profiles of isolated compounds with standards.

Detection of Contaminants: Electrophoresis can reveal contaminants or degradation products in crude drug extracts, which might not be detectable by other techniques like chromatography.

Identification of Metabolites and Secondary Metabolites

Many plants produce secondary metabolites, such as terpenoids, flavonoids, and glycosides, which are the key bioactive compounds in crude drugs. Electrophoresis, particularly in combination with other techniques such as mass spectrometry (MS), can help identify these metabolites in crude drug extracts.

Applications:

Separation of Secondary Metabolites: Proteins, peptides, and even some secondary metabolites can be separated by Capillary Electrophoresis or 2-DE, providing insight into the metabolic profile of a plant. This is especially useful for understanding how different extraction methods or plant species influence metabolite production.

Metabolic Profiling: Electrophoresis-based techniques allow for the separation of complex mixtures of metabolites from crude extracts. This is particularly useful for profiling and identifying the metabolites that contribute to a plant's therapeutic properties, such as antioxidants or anticancer compounds.

Fingerprinting for Herbal Drug Authentication

Electrophoresis is frequently used in the development of molecular markers for the authentication of herbal drugs. DNA markers and protein markers can be used to establish the identity of herbal drugs and ensure their quality and consistency.

Applications:

Molecular Markers for Authentication: Specific protein or DNA markers can be identified using electrophoresis to verify the authenticity of herbal drugs. For instance, in herbal drug authentication, DNA barcoding can be employed to compare the DNA profiles of crude drug samples to those of known plant species.

Quality Control: By analyzing the electrophoretic profiles of proteins or nucleic acids in herbal extracts, manufacturers can ensure that the raw materials used are consistent and meet the required standards for active ingredients.

Detection of Bioactive Compounds

Electrophoresis can also be used to detect specific bioactive compounds in crude drug extracts. For example, the separation of compounds that exhibit antimicrobial, antioxidant, or anticancer properties can be achieved using Protein Electrophoresis or Capillary Electrophoresis.

Applications:

Screening for Bioactivity: The electrophoretic profiles of crude drug extracts can reveal the presence of bioactive components. For example, electrophoresis can be used to detect proteins with antimicrobial properties in plant extracts.

Activity-Guided Isolation: Electrophoresis can be combined with bioassays to isolate bioactive compounds from plant extracts. After separation, the compounds are subjected to further testing for their biological activity, such as antibacterial or anticancer effects.

Advantages of Electrophoresis in Crude Drug Analysis

High Sensitivity: Electrophoresis is highly sensitive, allowing for the detection of very low concentrations of bioactive compounds in crude drug extracts.

Resolution: Electrophoresis provides high resolution, allowing for the separation of complex mixtures of proteins, nucleic acids, and small molecules.

Quantitative Analysis: Electrophoresis, particularly when coupled with other techniques like Western blotting or immunodetection, allows for quantitative analysis of specific bioactive compounds in crude drugs.

Cost-Effective: Compared to other advanced analytical techniques, electrophoresis is relatively cost-effective, making it accessible for routine quality control and research.

Limitations of Electrophoresis

Limited to Charged Molecules: Electrophoresis is effective for charged molecules (proteins, nucleic acids, etc.), but not for non-charged or very small molecules unless combined with other methods.

Sample Preparation: The preparation of crude drug extracts for electrophoresis can sometimes be challenging, especially when dealing with complex mixtures that require prior purification.

Electrophoresis techniques, including PAGE, Capillary Electrophoresis, and Isoelectric Focusing, provide invaluable tools for the isolation, purification, and identification of bioactive compounds from crude drugs. These techniques are essential for protein profiling, nucleic acid analysis, and metabolite identification, playing a pivotal role in ensuring the quality, authenticity, and bioactivity of herbal medicines. By incorporating electrophoresis into crude drug analysis, researchers can enhance the isolation of specific compounds, leading to better therapeutic development and quality control in the herbal drug industry.

Analysis of GPAT question papers for pharmacognosy
Last seven years GPAT analysis

Year	No. of Que.
2016	10
2017	12
2018	09
2019	13
2020	13
2021	15
2022	10

GPAT 2016

1. What is the Biological Source of Alexandrian Senna
1. Cassia Aungustifolia
2. Cassia Auctifolia
3. Cassia Nerifolia
4. Cassia Bravifolia

2) Which of the following properties are characteristics of tannis
P) They give a precipitate with alkaloids
Q) They give a yellow of bluish red color with iron(III) chloride
R) They transform hide into leather
S) They give a pale-pink precipipate with iodine

(a) P, Q, S
(b) P and Q
(c) P and R
(d) Only Q

3) Plasmodesmata is:
(a) Lignified element
(b) Vascular element
(c) Very fine protoplasmic thread
(d) None

4) Match product, Source and Plant part form which they obtained.

1) Bacosides	P) Aciacia Catechu	i) Herb
2) Cutch	Q) Rubia tictorium	ii) Leaf
3) Henna	R) Bacopa monnieri	iii) Root
4) Alizarm	S) Lawsonia internis	iv) Stem

A) 1-R-ii, 2-S-i, 3-q-iii, 4-R-ii
B) 1-R-i, 2-P-iv, 3-S-ii, 4-Q-iii
C) 4-R-ii, 3-P-I, 2-S-iii, 1-R-i
D) 1-R-iii, 2-S-i, 3-q-ii, 4-R-i

5) Match the drugs with plant from which they are isolated and their families

(1) Artemisinin	(P)	Periwinkle	(i)	Dioscoreace	
(2) Diosgenin	(Q)	May apple	(ii)	Apocynacea	
(3) Etoposide	(R)	Sweet wormwood	(iii)	Baeerberidace	
(4) Vinblastine and Vicnristine	(S)	Maxican wild yam	(iv)	Asteraceae	

(a) 1-R-iv, 2-S-i, 3-Q-iii, 4-P-ii
(b) 1-s-iv, 2-R-i, 3-Q-iii, 4-P-ii
(c) 1-Q-iii, 2-R-ii, 3-Q-i, 4-P-iv
(d) 1-R-iv, 2-S-iii, 3-Q-i, 4-P-ii

6) Which of the following drug does not give pink colour with ruthenium red
(a) Agar
(b) Guar gum
(c) Pectin
(d) Isabgol

7) To which chemical class the vinca alkaloids belong
(a) Tropane
(b) Indole
(c) Tryptophan
(d) Purine

8) Phenylalanine, a precursor of most of the phenolics is higher plants is a product of which one of the following pathways
(a) Shikimic acid pathway
(b) Malonic acid pathway
(c) Mevalonic acid pathway
(d) Methylerhtritol pathway

9) When morphine is heated at 140oC under pressure, with strong HCL, it converts pnto:
(a) Morphinone
(b) Apomorphine
(c) Codeine
(d) Oxymorphine

10) Match the following plant product with their chemical class

a)	b-amyrin	(P) Alkaloid secondary alcohol
b)	Sqaulene	(Q) Alkaloid, phenol
c)	Morphine	(R) Triterpene, secondary alcohol
d)	Ephedrine	(S) Asyclic triterpene, polyene

(a) 1-R, 2-S, 3-Q, 4-P
(b) 1-S, 2-Q, 3-P, 4-R
(c) 1-P, 2-S, 3-Q, 4-R
(d) 1-R, 2-S, 3-P, 4-Q

Answers
1. B
2. C
3. C
4. B
5. A
6. B
7. B
8. A
9. B
10. A

Analysis
1. Biological Source of Senna
2. Properties of Tannins
3. Plasmodesmata
4. Biological Source
5. Drugs Isolated from
6. Guar Gum
7. Vinca alkaloids
8. Pathways
9. Morphine Chemical Test
10. Drugs isolated from

GPAT-2017

1) Which of the following alkaloids has hypotensive activity
(a) Emetine
(b) Quinine
(c) Reserpine
(d) Papaverine

2) Which of the following alkaloid (form) is used to treat migrane
a) Vinca
b) Coca
c) Ergot
d) Belladonna

3) Which of the following formulations under ASU system are offered infinite period of shelf life in D and C Act
a) Asava & Arishta

b) Churna
c) Ghutika
d) Kwatha

4) Which of the following is not a thermoplastic resin
a) Phenolic plastic resin
b) Polystyrene
c) Polyethylene
d) Polypropylene

5) Choose the right combination from the following

1.	Diacytic stomata and sessile Trichome	(A) Datura
2.	Paracytic stomata and Unicellular and multi cellular	(B) Vasaka
3.	Anomocytic stomata and Unicellular and multi cellular Trichome	(C) Senna
4.	Anisocytic stomata and Multicellular covering trichome	(D) Digitalis

(a) 1-B, 2-C, 3-D, 4-A
(b) 1-C, 2-D, 3-A, 4-B
(c) 1-A, 2-D, 3-B, 4-C
(d) 1-D, 2-B, 3-A, 4-C

6) As per first schedule of Drugs and Cosmetics Act ,1940, following is name of the book under Siddha system of medicine
a) Arka Prakasha
b) Yog Ratnakar
c) Nagamuni
d) Vrinda Chikitsa

7) A steroidal phyto constituent lowering blood sugar is obtained from
a) Momordica charantia
b) Quillaja saponaria
c) Dioscorea deltoidea
d) Glycyrrhiza glabra

8) Which of the following gums is obtained from endosperm
a) Guar gum
b) Acacia gum
c) Tragacanth gum
d) Sterculia gum

9) A crude drug powder was heated with ferric chloride, water and concentrated hydrochloric acid followed by extraction with chloroform. The chloroform layer was treated with ammonia, the ammonical layer turned pink.
The test indicates presence of _ phytoconstitutent
a) Anthraquinone-C-glycosides
b) Flavanones

c) Cardiac glycosides
d) Saponin glycosides

10) Which of the following genera is not the source for tropane alkaloids
a) Datura
b) Duboisia
c) Nicotiana
d) Atropa

11) Methanolic extract of a crude drug powder when treated with magensium turnings and concentrated hydrochloric acid turned the solution magenta coloured.
The test is termed as
a) Shinoda test
b) Van Urk's Test
c) Keller Killiani test
d) Vitali Morin Test

12) Etoposide and Teniposide are the semisynthetic derivatives of
a) Myrrhabolic acid
b) Podophyllotoxin
c) Abietic acid
d) Umbelliferone

Answers
1. C
2. C
3. A
4. A
5. A
6. C
7. A
8. A
9. A
10. C
11. A
12. B

Analysis
1. Alkaloids Hypotensive Activity
2. Ergot
3. Asava & Arishta
4. Plastic Resin
5. Stomata
6. Book of Siddha System of Medicine
7. Momordica Charantia
8. Guar Gum

9. Anthraquinone-C-Glycosides
10. Tropane Alakloids- Nicotiana
11. Shinoda Test
12. Podophyllotoxin

GPAT-2018

1) The constituent of Cochineal is:-
(a) Cantharidin
(b) Hirudin
(c) Tannic acid
(d) Carminic acid

2) The sweet taste and odour of fennel is due to:-
(a) Anethole
(b) Fenchone
(c) Eugenol
(d) Phellandrene

3) Catechu is used in medicine as an:-
(a) Antidiabetic
(b) Anti cancer
(c) Antipyretic
(d) Astringent

4) Tropane alkaloids are biosynthesized from amino acid
(a) Phenylalanine
(b) Tyrosine
(c) Ornithine
(d) Leucine

5) One mg of Lycopodium contains an average of:-
(a) 97000 spores
(b) 96000 spores
(c) 95000 spores
(d) 94000 spores

6) Charaka, a physician belonged to which system of medicine?
(a) Ayurveda
(b) Unani
(c) Siddha
(d) Homeopathy

7) The CCCN code indicating the botanical drugs is:-
(a) 2211
(b) 1122
(c) 1211

(d) 1311

8) Uncaria gambir belongs to the family:-
(a) Rubiaceae
(b) Combretaceae
(c) Punicaceae
(d) Rosaceae

9) Alkanna tinctoria (Boraginaceae) roots are used in:-
(a) Dandruff
(b) Tooth paste
(c) Facial cleansing wash
(d) Lipstick formulations and hair dyes

Answers
1. D
2. A
3. D
4. C
5. D
6. A
7. C
8. A
9. D

Analysis
1. Cochnial Chemical Constituent
2. Fennel
3. Catechu
4. Tropane Alkaloids
5. Lycopodium
6. System of Medicine
7. CCCN Code
8. Unicaria Gambir (Gambir) (Catechu)
9. Alkanna Tinctoria (Starflower)

GPAT-2019

1) The size Of Lycopodium spores is :
(a) 45 nm
(b) 15 nm
(c) 35 nm
(d) 25 nm

2) Regholarrhenines A-F have been isolated from :
(a) Veratrums
(b) Areca
(c) Aconite
(d) Kurchi

3) Pungency of Zingiber officinale rhizome is due to the presence of :
(a) Citral
(b) Gingerol
(c) Commiphoric acid
(d) Gingeral

4) The principal cultivation areas of pyrethrum flowers are in -
(a) Sri Lanka
(b) Malaysia
(c) India
(d) Kenya

5) In Cassia angustifolia short-term drought :

a) Increases the concentration of sennosides A + B
b) Decreases the concentration of sennosides A + B
c) Causes loss of leaf biomass
d) Causes death of the plant

6) The Glycoside Scilliroside in red sqrill acts as :
(a) Insecticide
(b) Rodenticide
(c) Acaricide
(d) Molluscide

7) Shellac is a resinous substance prevtred from a secretion that encrusts the bodies of a scale insect :

(a) Viverra civet
(b) Karria lacca
(c) Acipenser huso
(d) Alverites moschiferus

8) All members of this order are trees or shrubs; mostly evergreen with needle - like leaves; monoecious or dioecious - sporophylls usually in cones. Resin ducts occur in all parts:
a) Cycadales
b) Ginkgoales
c) Taxales
d) Coniferae

9) In Gambir - fluorescin test the petroleum spirit layer shows a strong :
a) Green fluorescence
b) Blue fluorescence
c) Yellow fluorescence
d) Red fluorescence

10) Antiviral action of Neem in due to :
a) Kaemferol
b) Nelanin

c) Nimbin
d) Azadirachitin

Answers

1. D
2. D
3. B
4. D
5. A
6. B
7. B
8. D
9. A
10. C

Analysis

1. Lycopodium Spores
2. Kurchi Chemical Constituents
3. Ginger
4. Pyrethrum Flowers
5. Senna
6. Red Squill
7. Shellac
8. Description of Tree
9. Gambir Chemical Test
10. Neem

GPAT-2020

1) Violin gut is obtained from intestine of
(a) Horse
(b) Cat
(c) Sheep
(d) Camel

2) In the process of Extraction, ethanol is used as a solvent for
(a) Sucrose
(b) Waxes
(c) Alkaloids
(d) GUMS

3) Plants which are not differentiated into root, stem and leaves are :
(a) Plant aginales
(b) Principes
(c) Thallophyte
(d) Bromeliales

4) The major property of Ayurvedic herbs, "Rasa" indicates
(a) Taste
(b) Post digestive effect

(c) Potency
(d) Physicochemical properties

5) A fixed oil when added to an equal volume of ethanol; clear liquid is obtained; on cooling at O°C and on storage for three hours, the liquid remains clear such fixed oil is identified as:
(a) Castor Oil
(b) Soyabean oil
(c) Neem oil
(d) Evening Primrose oil

6) In shikimic acid pathway, chorismate mutase converts chorismic acid to
(a) Carotenoids
(b) Phytol
(c) Prephenate (Prephenic acid)
(d) Gutta

7) In colour test for alkaloids colchicine with mineral acids gives
(a) Blue colour
(b) Red colour
(c) Yellow colour
(d) Violet colour

8) Nicotine from tobacco is an alkaloid which is
(a) Oxygen free liquid
(b) Semisolid
(c) Crystalline
(d) Oxygen free solid

9) In yam, the presence of, irregular arrangement of the fibres, the ends of which often project from the surface is because of
(a) Absence of linters
(b) Absence of combing
(c) Presence of impurities
(d) Improper drying

10) In Aloe the mucilage containing parenchymatous cells are present in
(a) Central parenchymatous region
(b) Pericyclic cells
(c) Epidermis
(d) Vascular bundles

11) As per the definition of D and C Act, Gudakhu (rubbed against human teeth) is considered as :
(a) Food
(b) Drug
(c) Sweeting gum
(d) Cosmetic

12) The fundamental principle "Law of similia" falls under which therapy
(a) Ayurveda
(b) Siddha
(c) Homoeopathy
(d) Aroma therapy

13) Dragendorff's reagent is
(a) Potassium iodate
(b) Potassium bismuth iodide
(c) Potassium mercuric iodide
(d) Potassium picrate

Answers
1. C
2. C
3. C
4. A
5. A
6. C
7. C
8. A
9. B
10. A
11. D
12. C
13. B

Analysis
1. Violin Gut
2. Solvent used for Extraction in Alkaloids
3. Description of Plant
4. Property of Ayurvedic Herb – Rasa
5. Castor Oil
6. Pathway
7. Colchicine Chemical Test
8. Nicotine Alkaloid
9. Yam
10. Aloe Microscopy
11. Gudakhu
12. Homeopathy System of medicine
13. Dragendroff’s Reagent

GPAT–2021

1) Given below are two statements
A) The Ayurvedic drug Asava contains self-generated alcohol.
B) For preparation of Asava the extract of drug is subjected to process of calcination.

In light of the above statements choose the most appropriate answers given in options below:

a) Both A&B are correct but B is the explanation of A
b) Both A&B are correct but B is not the correct explanation of A
c) A is Correct but B is not Correct
d) A is not correct but B is correct

2) The Ring structure present in Strychnine is:
a) Indole
b) Imidazole
c) Purine
d) Phenanthrene

Answers
1. C
2. A

Analysis
1. Asava & Arishta
2. Strychnine
3. Terpenes
4. WHO Guidelines
5. Evaluation of Herbal Drugs
6. Classification of Drugs
7. Chemical Test
8. Extraction
9. Plant Tissue Culture
10. Alkaloid
11. Unorganized Drugs
12. Chemical Test
13. Properties of Drug
14. Chemical Test
15. Chemical Test

GPAT-2022

1) HPTLC analysis is useful for following types of analysis of herbal drugs
A. Quantitative estimation of marker compound
B. Authentication of extracts
C. Detection of pesticides
D. Standardization of herbal drugs
Choose the correct answer from the options given below:
1. A, B and D only
2. D only
3. A and D only
4. A, B, C and D

2) Anthranilic acid is an immediate precursor in the formation of
1. Tyrosine

2. Tryptophan
3. Ornithine
4. Methidine

3) Tropane nucleus is combination of
1. Pyrolidine & piperidine
2. Pyrolidine & pyridine
3. Pyrolidine & oscine
4. Piperidine & oscine

4) Type of alkaloids present in Colchicum
1. Tropane alkaloids
2. Steroidal glycoalkaloids
3. Amino alkaloids
4. Quinoline alkaloids

5) One of the following is an example of chemical method of evaluation
1. Determination of volatile oil
2. Determination of refractive index
3. Detection of alkaloids
4. Determination of vascular bundles

6) Rancidity in the fixed oils generally show
1. Higher Iodine value as compared to the standards
2. Higher Acid value as compared to the standards
3. Higher Peroxide value as compared to the standards
4. Higher level of Unsaponifiable matter

7)
A. Rutin is a Bioflavonoid.
B. Rutin is a flavonol glycosides
C. Rutin is used in Capillary bleeding
D. Rutin is used as Vitamin P

Which of the above are true for Rutin?

1. A and B only
2. A, B and C only
3. A, B and D only
4. All of these

8) 'Star spots' present in the transverse section of decorticated Rhubarb rhizomes are-
1. Lignified cells
2. Pericyclic fibres
3. Concentric vascular bundles
4. Crystals of calcium oxalate

9) The best quality of the Lemon oil is obtained by using-
1. Hydrodistillation method
2. Extraction method
3. Enfleurage method
4. Hand press method

10) Dioscin, a steroidal saponin glycoside of Dioscorea tubers after hydrolysis gives-
1. Diosgenin + 3 Glucose
2. Diosgenin + 3 Rhamnose
3. Diosgenin + 2 Glucose + 1 Rhamnose
4. Diosgenin + 1 Glucose + 2 Rhamnose

Answers
1. D
2. B
3. A
4. C
5. C
6. B
7. D
8. C
9. D
10. D

Analysis
1. Evaluation of Herbal Drugs
2. Precursor of Drug
3. Tropane Nucleus
4. Alkaloid
5. Evaluation of Herbal Drugs
6. Rancidity
7. Rutin
8. Rhubarb
9. Lemon Oil
10. Dioscin

Bibliography:

1) W.C.Evans, Trease and Evans Pharmacognosy, 16thedition, W.B. Sounders & Co., London, 2009.
2) MohammadAli. Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry, CBS Publishers & Distribution, New Delhi.
3) Text book of Pharmacognosyby C.K. Kokate, Purohit, Gokhlae (2007), 37thEdition, Nirali Prakashan, New Delhi.
4) Herbal drug industryby R.D. Choudhary (1996), Ist Edn, Eastern Publisher, New Delhi.
5) Essentials of Pharmacognosy, Dr.SH.Ansari, IInd edition, Birla publications, New Delhi, 2007
6) Herbal Cosmetics by H.Pande, Asia Pacific Business press, Inc, New Delhi.
7) A.N. Kalia, Textbook of Industrial Pharmacognosy, CBS Publishers, New Delhi, 2005.
8) R Endress, Plant cell Biotechnology, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1994.
9) Pharmacognosy & Pharmacobiotechnology. James Bobbers, Marilyn KS, VE Tylor.
10) The formulation and preparation of cosmetic, fragrances and flavours.
11) Remington's Pharmaceutical sciences.
12) Text Book of Biotechnology by Vyas and Dixit.
13) Text Book of Biotechnology by R.C. Dubey.
14) Pharmacognosy & phytochemistry-II, K. Prabhu, G. Arunachalam, Thakur publication, Lucknow, edition 2019.